



Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Router Software Configuration Guide

First Published: 2021-07-09

Last Modified: 2026-07-14

Americas Headquarters

Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
<http://www.cisco.com>
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

Full Cisco Trademarks with Software License

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html>. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)



CONTENTS

Full Cisco Trademarks with Software License iii

CHAPTER 1

Overview 1

- Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series routers 1
- Access CLI using a router console 2
 - Access the router using the console interface 3
- Initial bootup security 4
 - Change the default password 4
 - Telnet and HTTP protocols 5
- Remote console CLI access methods 6
 - Router console connections 6
 - Set up the IR8140H to run SSH 6
 - Access a console interface using telnet 8
- CLI sessions 9
 - Change CLI session timeout 9
 - Lock a CLI session 10

CHAPTER 2

New Features 11

- New features for Cisco IOS XE 26.1.1 11
- New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.18.2 11
- New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.16.1a 11
- New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1a 12
- New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1a 12
- New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 12
 - IKEv2 for WPAN support 12

WPAN high availability support	12
Yang model for WPAN	13
Yang model for BBU	13
Yang model for GPS	13
Itron CAM Module support	14

CHAPTER 3

Using Cisco IOS XE software 15

Command modes	15
Keyboard shortcuts	17
CLI command forms	18
Using the history buffer to recall commands	18
Configuration files management	19
Saving configuration changes	19
Filter output from the show and more commands	19
Information about platforms and Cisco software images	20
Cisco feature navigator	21
Getting help	21
Finding command options examples	21
Software advisor	25
Software release notes	25

CHAPTER 4

Basic router configuration 27

IR8140H interface names	27
Verify basic configuration of router	28
Configure global parameters	34
Configure Gigabit Ethernet interface	35
Configure sub-interface on GigabitEthernet0/0/0	36
Configure a loopback interface	37
Cisco Discovery Protocol for security	38
Configure command-line access	38
Configure a static route	40
Configuring dynamic routes	41
Configure routing information protocol	41
Enhanced interior gateway routing protocol	43

Modular QoS CLIs 43

Configuring VLANs 43

CHAPTER 5

Configuring Secure Shell 45

Secure Shell 45

Prerequisites for configuring Secure Shell 45

Restrictions for configuring Secure Shell 45

SSH and router access 46

SSH servers, integrated clients, and supported versions 46

SSH configuration guidelines 47

How to Configure Secure Shell 47

Set up the IR8140H to run SSH 47

Configure the SSH server 48

SSH configuration and status commands 50

Configure the router for local authentication and authorization 50

Secure copy 52

Prerequisites for secure copy 52

Restrictions for configuring secure copy 52

Configure secure copy server 52

Additional references 54

CHAPTER 6

Software installation reference 55

Software installation reference 55

Software installation requirements 55

Cisco software licenses 55

Install Cisco IOS XE release 57

ROMMON image software packages 58

File systems 59

Autogenerated file directories and files 59

Flash storage 60

Related documentation 61

CHAPTER 7

Software Maintenance Upgrade 63

Software Maintenance Upgrade package 63

	SMU workflow requirements	64
	Install a patch image	64
	Uninstall patch image using rollback	66
	Uninstall the patch image using deactivate, commit, and remove commands	68
CHAPTER 8	Smart Licensing Using Policy (SLP)	71
	Smart licensing using policy on Cisco routers	71
CHAPTER 9	Battery Backup Unit (BBU)	73
	Battery Backup Units	73
	BBU mode configurations	73
	Enable BBU	74
	Disable BBU	74
	Reset BBU	75
	Enable or disable transportation mode on the router	76
	Upgrade the BBU	77
CHAPTER 10	Tamper detection	81
	Tamper detection scenarios	81
CHAPTER 11	Power Over Ethernet (PoE)	83
	Power over Ethernet	83
	Device detection and power allocations	83
	Power budget calculation for router connected modules	84
	Key considerations	84
	Configure PoE using CLI	85
	Verify PoE configuration	85
	Debugging commands for PoE	87
CHAPTER 12	12V DC output for third party device	89
	12V DC outputs	89
CHAPTER 13	NTP timing based on GPS clock	91

Configure NTP using GPS time 91

CHAPTER 14

vCPU and RAM distribution 93

Introduction 93

Distribution of vCPU and RAM resources for Cisco IOx applications 93

Higher CPU and RAM allocation for IOx applications 94

Configure data plane heavy template 94

Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution 95

Configure the Service Plane Heavy Template 96

Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution 96

CHAPTER 15

Cellular pluggable interface modules 99

CHAPTER 16

Configuring Cisco Resilient Mesh and the WPAN Module 107

Cisco Resilient Mesh and WPAN modules 107

Configure the WPAN interface 108

Enable dot1x, mesh-security and DHCPv6 109

Configure IEEE154 settings 110

Configure group multicast 111

Configure RPL 112

Configure the power outage server 113

Configuring Cisco Resilient Mesh Security 113

Configure mesh key 113

Cisco Resilient Mesh Security configuration example 114

Verifying Cisco Resilient Mesh Security configuration 115

IPv6 multicast agents 116

Configure IR8100 as PIM6 router 118

Configure DTLS relay for EST 119

TLS Support Matrix 120

Mesh stack modes 120

Configure CG-Mesh stack mode 121

Configure Wi-SUN stack mode 122

Modulation and data rate 123

Limited Function Nodes 126

Direct parenting of LFN support in Wi-SUN mesh deployment	128
Verify WPAN	129
IR8100 basic WPAN configurations	130
Example of IR8100 configuration settings for CR-Mesh	131
ASR configuration example for CR-Mesh	135
Check and upgrade the WPAN firmware version	140
Upgrade WPAN firmware	140
Upgrade WPAN firmware (CG-Mesh to WiSUN)	141

CHAPTER 17

System messages	143
System messages	143
Information about process management	143
How to Find Error Message Details	143

CHAPTER 18

Environmental monitoring	149
Environmental monitoring	149
Environmental monitoring	149
Environmental monitoring and reporting functions	149
Environmental monitoring functions	150
Environmental Reporting Functions	151
Additional references	157
Technical assistance	157

CHAPTER 19

IOx application hosting	159
Application hosting	159
Application hosting	159
Application hosting	159
IOx framework	160
Cisco application hosting	160
IOXMAN	160
Application hosting on the IR8100 industrial integrated services router	161
VirtualPortGroup	162
vNICs	163
Configure application hosting	164

Enable IOx	164
Configure a VirtualPortGroup to a Layer 3 data port	165
Install and uninstall apps	166
Override the app resource configuration	168
Verify the application hosting configuration	169
Configuration examples for application hosting	170
Example: Enable IOx	170
VirtualPortGroup configuration to a Layer 3 data port example	171
App installation and uninstallation commands	171
App resource configuration override example	171
Native docker support	171
Enable signed verification for Cisco signed applications	173
Cisco Cyber Vision and Edge Intelligence	173
Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent	174

CHAPTER 20

Cisco SD-WAN support 175

Cisco SD-WAN overview	175
Related documentation	176

CHAPTER 21

ROM Monitor overview 177

ROM Monitor overview and basic procedures	177
ROM Monitor	177
Access ROM Monitor mode	178
Check the current ROMmon version	178
Commonly used ROM Monitor commands	180
Examples	180
Change the ROM Monitor prompt	180
Display the configuration register setting	181
Environment variable settings	181
Frequently used environmental variables	182
Display environment variable settings	182
Environment variable settings	182
Save environment variable settings	183
Exit ROM Monitor mode	183

Configuration example	183
Upgrade the ROMmon for a router	184

CHAPTER 22	WAN Monitoring	185
	WANMon	185
	Built-in recovery actions	185
	Prerequisites	186
	Guidelines and limitations	187
	Configure WANMon	187
	Verify WANMon configuration	189
	Configuration examples	189
	WANMon cellular interface configuration example	189
	Multiple WAN link monitoring example	189

CHAPTER 23	Yang data models	191
	Support for YANG data models	191

CHAPTER 24	Process health monitors	193
	Process health monitors	193
	Control plane resources	193
	System process monitors	193
	View Cisco IOS process resource	194
	Overall Control Plane resources	195
	Monitoring hardware using alarms	197
	Router design and monitoring hardware	197
	BootFlash Disk Monitoring	197
	Approaches for monitoring hardware alarms	197

CHAPTER 25	Unified Threat Defence	199
	Unified threat defense	199
	Unified threat defense restrictions	200
	License requirements for UTD features	200
	References for unified threat defense configuration on IR8140	200

CHAPTER 26**Troubleshooting 201**

Troubleshooting 201

Diagnostic mode 201

Recommendation: prepare information before contacting support 202

Show interfaces troubleshooting command 202

Software upgrade methods 203

Change the configuration register 203

Configure the configuration register for autoboot 204

Reset the router 205

Recover a lost password 206

Reset the configuration register value 207

Configure a console port transport map 207

View console port, SSH, and telnet handling configurations 209

Factory reset commands 210



CHAPTER 1

Overview

This document outlines the core characteristics and functional capabilities of the system to facilitate effective configuration and management.

- [Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series routers, on page 1](#)
- [Access CLI using a router console, on page 2](#)
- [Initial bootup security , on page 4](#)
- [Remote console CLI access methods, on page 6](#)
- [CLI sessions, on page 9](#)

Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series routers

A Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Router (IR8140H) is a next-generation, modular, IP66/67-rated industrial router that:

- is designed for outdoor use,
- features four external module slots plus two onboard WAN ports, and
- is available in two models: IR8140H-P-K9 (supports Power over Ethernet) and IR8140H-K9 (does not support PoE).

Key points to consider

Consider these points before using this guide:

- The terms IR8140H , IR8100 , and router are used throughout this document in text and CLI examples to refer to the Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Router, unless otherwise noted.
- The documentation set for this product strives to use bias-free language. For this documentation set, bias-free is defined as language that does not imply discrimination based on age, disability, gender, racial identity, ethnic identity, sexual orientation, socioeconomic status, and intersectionality.
- Exceptions may be present in the documentation due to language that is hardcoded in the user interfaces of the product software, language used based on RFP documentation, or language that is used by a referenced third-party product.

Supported modules

The IR8140H Series features four external module slots plus two onboard WAN ports and supports:

- 60W PSU,
- GNSS onboard transceiver,
- 900MHz WPAN – OFDM/FSK,
- 4G/LTE IRMH modules, mSATA module,
- 1x 1GbE SFP WAN and 1x 1GbE Cu WAN,
- PoE (15W) – Supported only on the IR8140H-P-K9 PID,
- 12VDC_OUT port (Only available when PoE is not in use),
- Battery Backup Units (BBUs) – Up to 3,
- 2x Alarm ports (Digital IO).

Access CLI using a router console

Cisco IR8140H routers have an RJ45 RS232 serial console port located on the CPU module. The default baud rate is 9600. You can use any RJ45 console cable that is available in the market.

On a device fresh from the factory, you are greeted with a System Configuration Dialog. If the router was ordered for the use of Cisco PnP connect services, in the case of centralized provisioning, the router skips the initial dialog.



Note Autoinstall will terminate if any input is detected on console.

Procedure

- Step 1** Connect the RJ45 console cable to the router's RS232 serial console port on the CPU module.
- Step 2** Open a terminal emulator on your computer and configure it to use 9600 baud rate.
- Step 3** Power on the router and observe the console output. The System Configuration Dialog details are displayed as given in the example.

Example:

```
--- System Configuration Dialog ---
    Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]:
    WARNING: ** NOTICE ** This is the final IOS XE release to provide support for
the H.323 protocol. Consider switching to SIP for multimedia applications before upgrading
to 17.6.1.
    *Jan 27 23:51:55.579: %TAMPER_ALARM-0-TAMPER_ALARM_ASSERT: Tamper alarm slot
(Tamper alarm slot 2) asserted
    *Jan 27 23:51:55.579: %TAMPER_ALARM-0-TAMPER_ALARM_ASSERT: Tamper alarm slot
(Tamper alarm slot 3) asserted
    Autoinstall trying DHCPv6 on GigabitEthernet0/0/0,GigabitEthernet0/0/1
```

```

Autoinstall trying DHCPv4 on GigabitEthernet0/0/0,GigabitEthernet0/0/1
AUTO IP is starting!!!!
start Autoip process
Acquired IPv4 address 192.168.0.202 on Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
Received following DHCPv4 options:
dns-server-ip : 192.168.0.2
si-addr : 192.168.0.2
hostname : Router
stop Autoip process
Press RETURN to get started!
*Jan 27 23:53:08.903: %SYS-5-USERLOG_NOTICE: Message from tty0(user id: ):
Device in day0 workflow, some non user-configured options may be enabled by default
*Jan 27 23:53:08.920: %SYS-5-CONFIG_P: Configured programmatically by process
PnP Agent Discovery from console as vty0
OK to enter CLI now...
pnp-discovery can be monitored without entering enable mode
Entering enable mode will stop pnp-discovery
*Jan 27 23:53:08.921: %PNP-6-HTTP_CONNECTING: PnP Discovery trying to connect
to PnP server (https://devicehelper.cisco.com.:443/pnp/HELLO)
*Jan 27 23:53:29.880: %PNP-6-HTTP_CONNECTED: PnP Discovery connected to PnP
server (https://devicehelper.cisco.com.:443/pnp/HELLO)
*Jan 27 23:53:30.893: %PNP-6-PNP_SUDI_UPDATE: Device SUDI
[PID:IR8140H-P-K9,SN:FDO2438J8UN] identified
*Jan 28 00:02:43.494: %PNP-6-PNP_DISCOVERY_STOPPED: PnP Discovery stopped (Config
Wizard)

Interface IP-Address OK? Method Status Protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 192.168.0.202 YES DHCP up up
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 unassigned YES unset administratively down down
WPAN0/1/0 unassigned YES unset up up
Router#

```

Step 4 Press the **RETURN** key to get started and access the CLI prompt.

The device now has a basic configuration that you can build upon.

Access the router using the console interface

Use this task to access the router's console interface and enter privileged EXEC mode to manage and configure the device through the CLI.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Enter your system password when prompted. Skip this step if the enable password has not been configured. Once your password is accepted, the privileged EXEC mode prompt is displayed.

Example:

```
Password: enablepass
```

Note

You now have access to the CLI in privileged EXEC mode and you can enter the necessary commands to complete your desired tasks.

Step 3 Use the **quit** command to exit the console session.

Example:

```
Router> quit
```

Initial bootup security

This reference provides guidance on enforcing default password changes and managing Telnet and HTTP access during initial device configuration.

- [Enforce Changing Default Password](#)
- [Telnet and HTTP](#)

Change the default password

When the router is first booted after a factory reset or when it is new, you will receive a prompt on the console to enter the initial configuration dialog. Cisco recommends using the enable secret command instead of the enable password command for improved encryption.

Procedure

Step 1 Enter your response to the initial configuration dialog prompt on the console. If you choose no, the router proceeds with auto-install attempts and then prompts you to set the enable secret password.

Example:

```
Would you like to enter the initial configuration dialog? [yes/no]: no
```

Step 2 Use the **enable secret** command to enter a new password when prompted to set the password.

Example:

```
The enable secret is a password used to protect
  access to privileged EXEC and configuration modes.
  This password, after entered, becomes encrypted in
  the configuration.
-----
secret should be of minimum 10 characters with
  at least 1 upper case, 1 lower case, 1 digit and
  should not contain [cisco]
-----
Enter enable secret: *****
Confirm enable secret: *****
```

Note

The initial dialog forces you to set a new enable password using the enable secret command. The password must be at least 10 characters, include upper and lower case letters, at least one digit, and must not contain the word "cisco". If a weak password is entered, you will be prompted again until a strong password is provided. You must enter the password twice for confirmation.

- Step 3** Save the configuration and complete the setup process by selecting option 2 to save the configuration to NVRAM and exit.

Example:

The following configuration command script was created:

```
enable secret 9 $9$rDzH3rLqjlFhek$G9UDZE7moWqsKJEZfJAH2yO.SPhKZeKJsEe./CPEz1.
!
end
[0] Go to the IOS command prompt without saving this config.
[1] Return back to the setup without saving this config.
[2] Save this configuration to nvram and exit.
Enter your selection [2]: 2
Building configuration...
[OK]
Use the enabled mode 'configure' command to modify this configuration.
Press RETURN to get started!
Router> en
Password:
Router# sh run | inc sec
enable secret 9 $9$rDzH3rLqjlFhek$G9UDZE7moWqsKJEZfJAH2yO.SPhKZeKJsEe./CPEz1.
Router#
```

Note

After you save the configuration, you can access privileged EXEC mode using the new enable secret password. When you enter the password, it is masked, and the configuration will be encrypted and saved to NVRAM.

The router is now secured with a strong enable secret password, and the configuration is saved. You can proceed to further configure the router as needed.

Telnet and HTTP protocols

Telnet and HTTP protocols are remote access protocols that:

- have modified default boot configurations as of release 17.5.1,
- are automatically configured during factory reset or initial boot processes, and
- include changes to telnet, HTTP server, HTTP client, SSH, and HTTPS server settings.

Default configuration changes

For devices after a factory reset or when they are new from the factory, these events take place:

- Disable telnet.
- Disable http server.
- HTTP client works.
- Enable SSH.
- Enable https server.

Remote console CLI access methods

A remote console CLI access method is a network-based approach that:

- enables remote access to the IR8100H CLI via Telnet or SSH,
- provides Telnet functionality that is disabled by default for security reasons, and
- offers SSH as the preferred and more secure method for remote CLI access.

Router console connections

To access the router remotely using Telnet from a TCP/IP network, you can configure the router to support virtual terminal lines using the **line vty** global configuration command. You can configure the virtual terminal lines to require users to log in and specify a password.

See the Cisco IOS-XE Device hardening guide at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/docs/ip/access-lists/13608-21.html> for details.

Configuring the diagnostic and wait banners is optional, but recommended. The banners are especially useful as indicators to users about the status of their Telnet or SSH attempts.

See the [Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference](#) document for more information about the **line vty global** configuration command.

To prevent disabling login on a line, specify a password with the **password** command when you configure the **login** command.

If you are using authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA), configure the **login authentication** command. To prevent disabling login on a line for AAA authentication when you configure a list with the login authentication command, you must also configure that list using the **aaa authentication login** global configuration command.

For more information about AAA services, see the [Cisco IOS XE Security Configuration Guide: Secure Connectivity](#) and the [Cisco IOS Security Command Reference](#) documents. For more information about the **login line-configuration** command, see the [Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference](#) document.

In addition, before you make a Telnet connection to the router, you must have a valid hostname for the router or have an IP address configured on the router. For more information about the requirements for connecting to the router using Telnet, information about customizing your Telnet services, and using Telnet key sequences, see the [Cisco IOS Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide](#).

Set up the IR8140H to run SSH

To set up your device to run SSH, follow this procedure.



Note Configure user authentication for local or remote access. This step is required.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Note

Enter password if prompted.

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 3 Use the **hostname** *hostname* command to configure a hostname for your device.

Example:

```
Router(config)# hostname your_hostname
```

Note

You can follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

Step 4 Use the **ip domain-name** *domain_name* command to configure a host domain for your device.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip domain-name your_domain_name
```

Step 5 Use the **crypto key generate rsa** command to enable the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device and generate an RSA key pair.

Example:

```
Router(config)# crypto key generate rsa
```

Note

You must follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server. Generating an RSA key pair for the device automatically enables SSH. A minimum modulus size of 1024 bits is recommended. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use.

Step 6 Use the **end** command to exit to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# end
```

Step 7 Use the **show running-config** command to verify your entries.

Example:

```
Router# show running-config
```

Step 8 (Optional) Use the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save your entries in the configuration file.

Example:

```
Router# copy running-config startup-config
```

Access a console interface using telnet

Use this task to access a device's console interface using Telnet for CLI management and configuration.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **connect** *host* [*port*] [*keyword*] or **telnet** *host* [*port*] [*keyword*] command from your terminal or PC to connect to the router. Here, *host* is the router hostname or IP address, *port* is a decimal port number (23 is the default), and *keyword* is a supported keyword.

Example:

```
unix_host% telnet router
Trying 172.20.52.40...
Connected to 172.20.52.40.
Escape character is '^]'.
unix_host% connect
```

Note

For more information about these commands, see the Cisco IOS Terminal Services Command Reference document.

- Step 2** Enter your login password at the prompt. If no password is configured, press Return.

Example:

```
User Access Verification
Password: mypassword
```

- Step 3** Use the **enable** command from user EXEC mode to enable the router and enter privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

- Step 4** Enter your system password at the password prompt.

Example:

```
Password: enablepass
```

- Step 5** The privileged EXEC mode prompt is displayed once the enable password is accepted.

Example:

```
Router#
```

- Step 6** Enter the necessary commands to complete specific tasks using the CLI access in privileged EXEC mode.

- Step 7** Use the **exit** or **logout** command to exit the Telnet session.

Example:

```
Router# logout
```

CLI sessions

A CLI session is a command-line interface connection that:

- enables user access to system configuration and management functions,
- provides mechanisms to control user access and protect system resources, and
- prevents conflicts during concurrent user interactions.

CLI session management features

CLI sessions include the following management features:

- **Inactivity timeout:** Can be configured and enforced to automatically end idle sessions.
- **Session locking:** Prevents two users from overwriting each other's changes.
- **Reserved capacity:** Spare capacity is reserved for CLI session access to ensure users can connect even when the system is under load.

Change CLI session timeout

Setting the CLI session timeout increases the security of a CLI session by automatically ending idle sessions after a specified period of inactivity.

Procedure

-
- | | |
|---------------|---|
| Step 1 | Use the configure terminal command to enter the global configuration mode.
Example:
<pre>Router# configure terminal</pre> |
| Step 2 | Use the line console console-number command to access the configuration mode for the console line of the router.
Example:
<pre>Router(config)# line console 0</pre> |
| Step 3 | Use the session-timeout [minutes] command to set the session timeout. The value of <i>minutes</i> sets the amount of time that the CLI waits before timing out. Specify a value of 0 for <i>minutes</i> to disable session timeout.
Example:
<pre>Router(config-line)# session-timeout 10</pre> |
| Step 4 | Use the show line console console-number command to verify the value to which the session timeout has been set, which is shown as the value for idle session.
Example: |

```
Router# show line console 0
```

Lock a CLI session

To configure a temporary password on a CLI session, use the lock command in EXEC mode. The line is first configured as lockable, and then the lock command is used to assign a temporary password.



Note Before you can use the lock command, you need to configure the line using the lockable command.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **line console line-number** command to enter the line upon which you want to be able to use the lock command.

Example:

```
Router(config)# line console 0
```

Step 3 Use the **lockable** command to enable the line to be locked.

Example:

```
Router(config)# lockable
```

Step 4 Use the **exit** command to exit the configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# exit
```

Step 5 Use the **lock** command to lock the CLI session. The system prompts you for a password, which you must enter twice.

Example:

```
Router# lock
Password: <password>
Again: <password>
Locked
```



CHAPTER 2

New Features

This document provides an overview of the new features available in the system.

- [New features for Cisco IOS XE 26.1.1, on page 11](#)
- [New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.18.2, on page 11](#)
- [New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.16.1a, on page 11](#)
- [New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1a, on page 12](#)
- [New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1a, on page 12](#)
- [New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1, on page 12](#)

New features for Cisco IOS XE 26.1.1

This reference identifies the new features available in Cisco IOS XE 26.1.1 release.

New features in this release are:

- [Power Over Ethernet \(PoE\)](#)
- [Unified Threat Defence](#)

New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.18.2

New features in this release are:

- [Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent](#)
- [Common HSEC License](#)

New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.16.1a

This document outlines the new features available in the Cisco IOS XE 17.16.1a release.

- [Monitoring Radio Signal Parameters and GPS Coordinates of Cellular Telemetry using Syslog Messages](#)

New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1a

This document lists the new features available in the Cisco IOS XE 17.15.1a release.

This new feature is available in this release:

- [Higher CPU and RAM Allocation for IOx Applications](#)

New Features for Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1a

This document lists the new features available in the Cisco IOS XE 17.14.1a release.

- [Direct Parenting of LFN Support in Wi-SUN Mesh Deployment](#)

New features for Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1

This reference provides information about the new features available in Cisco IOS XE 17.8.1 release.

IKEv2 for WPAN support

IKEv2 for WPAN support is a routing capability that:

- enables IKEv2 dynamic routing from Cisco IOS-XE Release 17.8.1 on the IR8140H router,
- allows redistribution of WPAN external routes (such as MAP-T routes) into IKEv2, and
- supports both spoke and hub distribution models.

WPAN high availability support

WPAN high availability support is a redundancy feature that:

- enables high availability for WPAN between two IR8140H routers, each with one WPAN module,
- uses HSRP to track state between the two routers, and
- synchronizes WPAN state (RPL routes, mesh-security sessions and keys, multicast sequence numbers) between the two routers using a reliable UDP based protocol.

WPAN high availability limitations

WPAN HA has specific implementation constraints:

- WPAN HA will not integrate with the rest of the IOS XE HA infrastructure. It is specific to WPAN.
- WPAN HA will only be supported between two IR8140 routers with a single WPAN interface each.
- This feature cannot be used together with the Dual WPAN interface feature.

**Note**

WPAN HA will not integrate with the rest of the IOS XE HA infrastructure. It is specific to WPAN. WPAN HA will only be supported between two IR8140 routers with a single WPAN interface each. This feature cannot be used together with the Dual WPAN interface feature.

Yang model for WPAN

A Yang model for WPAN is an operational model that provides Yang operational model support for information available through WPAN show commands.

Available commands

Yang operational model support includes commands for:

- The WPAN interface (for example, **show wpan 0/X/0**)
- RPL commands (for example, **show wpan 0/X/0 rpl**)
- meshsec (for example, **show mesh-security**)

Cisco IOS-XE Yang Data Models are found here:

<https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xe>

Each release has a directory, and the 17.8.1 release is found under 1781.

Yang model for BBU

A Yang model for BBU is a data model that:

- provides operational model support for Battery Backup Unit (BBU) information,
- enables access to BBU information currently available via show commands, and
- follows Cisco IOS-XE Yang Data Model standards.

Yang model availability

The Yang operational model support has been added for the Battery Backup Unit (BBU) information currently available via show commands. For example, **show platform hardware battery**.

For more details on Cisco IOS-XE Yang Data Models, see

<https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xe>

Each release has a directory, and the 17.8.1 release is found under 1781.

Yang model for GPS

A Yang model for GPS is an operational model that provides structured access to GNSS information through standardized data formats instead of traditional show commands.

Yang model implementation details

Yang operational model support will be added for GNSS information currently available via show commands.

For example, **show platform hardware gnss**

Cisco IOS-XE Yang Data Models are found here:

<https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xe>

Each release has a directory, and the 17.8.1 release is found under 1781.

Itron CAM Module support

The IR8140 supports third party modules from Cisco IOS-XE Release 17.8.1.

Before inserting the 3rd-party module, use the CLI **hw-module subslot 0/1 3rdparty-mode** to configure the slot as 3rd-party mode, to avoid delays during boot caused by the system looking for ACT2, which does not exist on a 3rd-party module.



CHAPTER 3

Using Cisco IOS XE software

This reference outlines the fundamental components and operational capabilities of the Cisco IOS XE software.

- [Command modes , on page 15](#)
- [Keyboard shortcuts, on page 17](#)
- [CLI command forms, on page 18](#)
- [Using the history buffer to recall commands, on page 18](#)
- [Configuration files management, on page 19](#)
- [Saving configuration changes, on page 19](#)
- [Filter output from the show and more commands, on page 19](#)
- [Information about platforms and Cisco software images, on page 20](#)

Command modes

The command modes available in Cisco IOS XE are the same as those in traditional Cisco IOS. Access Cisco IOS XE software using the CLI, which is divided into several modes. The commands available depend on the current mode. To see the available commands for each mode, you can enter a question mark ? at the CLI prompt.

EXEC mode

After logging in to the CLI, you enter user EXEC mode, which provides access to a limited set of commands. To access all commands, enter privileged EXEC mode using a password.

When you log in to the CLI, you are in user EXEC mode. User EXEC mode contains only a limited subset of commands. To have access to all commands, you must enter privileged EXEC mode, normally by using a password. From privileged EXEC mode, you can issue any EXEC command—user or privileged mode—or you can enter global configuration mode.



Note

- Most EXEC commands are one-time commands such as the **show** commands which display important status information, and **clear** commands clear counters or interfaces.
- The EXEC commands are not saved when the software reboots.
- From privileged EXEC mode, you can run any EXEC command or enter the global configuration mode.

Configuration mode

Configuration modes allow you to change the running configuration. If you later save the running configuration to the startup configuration, these changed commands are retained when the software reboots. To enter specific configuration modes, you must start at global configuration mode. From global configuration mode, you can enter interface configuration mode and other modes, such as protocol-specific modes.

ROM monitor mode

ROM monitor mode is a separate mode used when the Cisco IOS XE software cannot load properly. If a valid software image is not found when the software boots or if the configuration file is corrupted at startup, the software may enter ROM monitor mode.

The table describes how to access and exit various common command modes of the Cisco IOS XE software. It shows examples of the prompts displayed for each mode.

Table 1: Accessing and exiting command modes

Command Mode	Access Method	Prompt	Exit Method
User EXEC	Log in.	Router>	Use the logout command.
Privileged EXEC	From user EXEC mode, use the enable command.	Router#	To return to user EXEC mode, use the disable command.
Global configuration	From privileged EXEC mode, use the configure command.	Router(config)#	To return to privileged EXEC mode from global configuration mode, use the exit or end command.
Interface configuration	From global configuration mode, specify an interface using an interface command.	Router(config-if)#	To return to global configuration mode, use the exit command. To return to privileged EXEC mode, use the end command.

Command Mode	Access Method	Prompt	Exit Method
Diagnostic	The router boots up or accesses diagnostic mode in these scenarios: • In some cases, diagnostic mode will be reached when the Cisco IOS process or processes fail. In most scenarios, however, the router will reload. • A user-configured access policy is configured using the transport-map command that directs a user into diagnostic mode. • A break signal (Ctrl-C , Ctrl-Shift-6, or the send break command) is entered and the router is configured to go to diagnostic mode when the break signal is received.	Router (diag) #	If failure of the Cisco IOS process is the reason for entering diagnostic mode, the Cisco IOS problem must be resolved and the router rebooted to get out of diagnostic mode. If the router is in diagnostic mode because of a transport-map configuration, access the router through another port or by using a method that is configured to connect to the Cisco IOS CLI.
ROM monitor	From privileged EXEC mode, use the reload EXEC command. Press the Break key during the first 60 seconds while the system is booting.	rommon#>	To exit ROM monitor mode, manually boot a valid image or perform a reset with autoboot set so that a valid image is loaded.

Keyboard shortcuts

Commands are not case sensitive. You can abbreviate commands and parameters if the abbreviations contain enough letters to be different from any other currently available commands or parameters.

Table 2: Keyboard shortcuts

Key Name	Purpose
Ctrl-B or the Left Arrow key ¹	Move the cursor back one character.

Key Name	Purpose
Ctrl-F or the Right Arrow key ¹	Move the cursor forward one character.
Ctrl-A	Move the cursor to the beginning of the command line.
Ctrl-E	Move the cursor to the end of the command line.
Esc B	Move the cursor back one word.
Esc F	Move the cursor forward one word.

CLI command forms

Most configuration commands have a **no** form. Use the **no** form to disable a function. Use the command without **no** to enable or re-enable a disabled function or to enable a function that is already disabled by default.

As an example, IP routing is enabled by default. If you want to disable IP routing, you can use the **no ip routing** command and to re-enable IP routing, you can use the **ip routing** command. The Cisco IOS software command reference publications provide the complete syntax for the configuration commands and describe what the **no** form of a command does.

Many CLI commands also have a **default** form. By issuing the `<command> default` command-name, you can configure the command to its default setting.

The Cisco IOS software command reference publications describe the function from a **default** form of the command when the **default** form performs a different function than the plain and **no** forms of the command. To see what default commands are available on your system, you can enter **default ?** in the appropriate command mode.

Using the history buffer to recall commands

The history buffer stores the last 20 commands entered, which can be accessed through history substitution commands.

Table 3: History substitution commands

Command	Purpose
Ctrl-P or the Up Arrow key ¹	Recalls commands in the history buffer, beginning with the most recent command. Repeat the key sequence to recall successively older commands.
Ctrl-N or the Down Arrow key ¹	Returns to more recent commands in the history buffer after recalling commands with Ctrl-P or the Up Arrow key.
Router# show history	While in EXEC mode, lists the last few commands you entered.

Command	Purpose
¹ The arrow keys function only on ANSI-compatible terminals such as VT100s.	

Configuration files management

The startup configuration file is stored in the nvram: file system. The running configuration files are stored in the system: file system. "Several other Cisco router platforms use this configuration file storage setup.

IOS XE encrypts the configuration file. For more information about encryption, see <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/docs/ip/access-lists/13608-21.html>.

As part of routine maintenance on any Cisco router, you must back up the startup configuration file. Copy the startup configuration file from NVRAM to one of the router's other file systems and to a network server. Backing up the startup configuration file makes it easy to recover if the file in NVRAM becomes unusable.

.

The **copy** command can be used to back up startup configuration files.

For more information on managing configuration files, see [Cisco IOS XE Configuration Fundamentals Configuration Guide](#).

Saving configuration changes

This task saves the configuration to the NVRAM using the **copy running-config startup-config** command.

Use the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save your configuration changes to the startup configuration so that the changes will not be lost if the software reloads or a power outage occurs. For example:

```
Router# copy running-config startup-config
Destination filename [startup-config]? enter
Building configuration...
OK]
IR1101#
*Sep 24 08:50:26.666: %SYS-6-PRIVCFG_ENCRYPT_SUCCESS: Successfully encrypted private config
file
```



Note It may take a few minutes to save the configuration.

Filter output from the show and more commands

Use the pipe character (|) with specific keywords to filter or search through the output of **show** and **more** commands.

Follow these steps to filter output from the show and more commands.

Procedure

Use the **show command** | {**append** | **begin** | **exclude** | **include** | **redirect** | **section** | **tee**} *regular-expression* command to filter or search through the output of a show or more command.

Note

- Enter a **show** or **more** command followed by the pipe character (`|`); one of the keywords **begin**, **include**, or **exclude**; and a regular expression on which you want to search or filter.
- The regular expression is case sensitive.
- The output matches certain lines of information in the configuration file.

Example

In this example, a modifier of the **show interface** command (**include protocol**) is used to display only the output lines in which the expression **protocol** appears:

```
Router# show interface | include protocol
GigabitEthernet0/0/0 is up, line protocol is up
1401 unknown protocol drops
GigabitEthernet0/0/1 is up, line protocol is up
3073 unknown protocol drops
WPAN0/1/0 is up, line protocol is up
0 unknown protocol drops
Cellular0/2/0 is up, line protocol is up
0 unknown protocol drops
Cellular0/2/1 is up (spoofing), line protocol is up (spoofing)
0 unknown protocol drops
Cellular0/3/0 is up, line protocol is up
0 unknown protocol drops
Cellular0/3/1 is down, line protocol is down
0 unknown protocol drops
Loopback1 is up, line protocol is up
0 unknown protocol drops
Tunnel1 is up, line protocol is up
Tunnel protocol/transport GRE/IP
0 unknown protocol drops
Tunnel2 is up, line protocol is up
Tunnel protocol/transport GRE/IP
0 unknown protocol drops
VirtualPortGroup1 is up, line protocol is up
0 unknown protocol drops
```

Information about platforms and Cisco software images

The Cisco IOS XE software is packaged in feature sets consisting of software images that support specific platforms.

For more information about Cisco IOS-XE configuration guides, see <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/ios-nx-os-software/ios-xe-17/series.html>.

The group of feature sets that are available for a specific platform depends on which Cisco software images are included in a release. To identify the set of software images available in a specific release or to determine if a feature is included in a given Cisco IOS XE software image, you can use [Cisco Feature Navigator](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/ios-nx-os-software/ios-xe-17/series.html) or see <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/ios-nx-os-software/ios-xe-17/series.html>.

Cisco feature navigator

You can use [Cisco Feature Navigator](#) to find information about platform support and software image support. Cisco Feature Navigator is a tool that enables you to determine which Cisco IOS XE software images support a specific software release, feature set, or platform. To use the navigator tool, an account on Cisco.com is not required.

Getting help

Provides instructions for accessing context-sensitive help and command completion features within the CLI.

Command	Purpose
help	Provides a brief description of the help system in any command mode.
abbreviated-command-entry?	Provides a list of commands that begin with a particular character string. Note There is no space between the command and the question mark.
abbreviated-command-entry<Tab>	Completes a partial command name.
?	Lists all the commands that are available for a particular command mode.
command ?	Lists the keywords or arguments that you must enter next on the command line. Note There is a space between the command and the question mark.

Finding command options examples

This section provides information about how to display the syntax for a command, including optional or required keywords and arguments, by using the question mark (?) at the configuration prompt.

To display keywords and arguments for a command, enter a question mark (?) at the configuration prompt or after entering a part of a command followed by a space. The Cisco IOS XE software displays a list and brief descriptions of the available keywords and arguments. For example, if you are in global configuration mode and want to see all the keywords and arguments for the **arap** command, you should type **arap ?** .

The <cr> symbol in command help output stands for carriage return. On older keyboards, the carriage return key is the **Return** key. On most modern keyboards, the carriage return key is the **Enter** key. The <cr>

symbol at the end of command help output indicates that you have the option to press **Enter** to complete the command and that the arguments and keywords in the list preceding the <cr> symbol are optional. The <cr> symbol by itself indicates that no more arguments or keywords are available, and that you must press **Enter** to complete the command.

Table 4: Finding command options

Command	Comment
<pre> Router> enable Password: <password> Router# </pre>	Enter the enable command and password to access privileged EXEC commands. You are in privileged EXEC mode when the prompt changes to a “#” from the “>”, for example, Router> to Router#
<pre> Router# configure terminal Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z. Router(config)# </pre>	Enter the configure terminal privileged EXEC command to enter global configuration mode. You are in global configuration mode when the prompt changes to Router (config)#
<pre> Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet ? <0-0> GigabitEthernet interface number Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/? <0-0> Port Adapter number Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/? <0-1> GigabitEthernet interface number Router (config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0? . <0-1> Router(config-if)# </pre>	Enter interface configuration mode by specifying the interface that you want to configure, using the interface GigabitEthernet global configuration command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. When the <cr> symbol is displayed, you can press Enter to complete the command. You are in interface configuration mode when the prompt changes to Router (config-if)#

Command	Comment
<pre> Router(config-if)# Interface configuration commands: . . . ip Interface Internet Protocol keepalive config commands lan-name Enable keepalive llc2 LAN Name command load-interval LLC2 Interface Subcommands calculation Specify interval for load locaddr-priority for an interface logging Assign a priority group interface Configure logging for loopback Configure internal loopback on an interface mac-address Manually set interface MAC address mls mls router sub/interface commands mpoa MPOA interface configuration commands mtu Set the interface (MTU) Maximum Transmission Unit netbios Use a defined NETBIOS access list or enable no name-caching its defaults Negate a command or set nrzi-encoding Enable use of NRZI encoding ntp Configure NTP . . . Router(config-if)# </pre>	Enter ? to display a list of all the interface configuration commands available for the interface. This example shows only some of the available interface configuration commands.

Command	Comment
<pre>Router(config-if)# ip ? Interface IP configuration subcommands: access-group Specify access control for packets accounting Enable IP accounting on this interface address Set the IP address of an interface authentication authentication subcommands bandwidth-percent Set EIGRP bandwidth limit broadcast-address Set the broadcast address of an interface cgmp Enable/disable CGMP directed-broadcast Enable forwarding of directed broadcasts dvmrp DVMRP interface commands hello-interval Configures IP-EIGRP hello interval helper-address Specify a destination address for UDP broadcasts hold-time Configures IP-EIGRP hold time . . . Router(config-if)# ip</pre>	Enter the command that you want to configure for the interface. This example uses the ip command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. This example shows only some of the available interface IP configuration commands.
<pre>Router(config-if)# ip address ? A.B.C.D IP address negotiated IP Address negotiated over PPP Router(config-if)# ip address</pre>	Enter the command that you want to configure for the interface. This example uses the ip address command. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. In this example, you must enter an IP address or the negotiated keyword. A carriage return (<cr>) is not displayed. Therefore, you must enter additional keywords or arguments to complete the command.
<pre>Router(config-if)# ip address 172.16.0.1 ? A.B.C.D IP subnet mask Router(config-if)# ip address 172.16.0.1</pre>	Enter the keyword or argument that you want to use. This example uses the 172.16.0.1 IP address. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. In this example, you must enter an IP subnet mask. <cr> is not displayed. Therefore, you must enter additional keywords or arguments to complete the command.

Command	Comment
<pre>Router(config-if) # 172.16.0.1 255.255.255.0 ? secondary Make this IP address a secondary address <cr> Router(config-if) # 172.16.0.1 255.255.255.0</pre>	Enter the IP subnet mask. This example uses the 255.255.255.0 IP subnet mask. Enter ? to display what you must enter next on the command line. In this example, you can enter the secondary keyword, or you can press Enter. <cr> is displayed. Press Enter to complete the command, or enter another keyword.
<pre>Router(config-if) # 172.16.0.1 255.255.255.0 Router(config-if) #</pre>	Press Enter to complete the command.

Software advisor

Cisco maintains the Software Advisor tool. See [Tools and Resources](#). You can use the Software Advisor tool to see if a feature is supported in a Cisco IOS XE release, to locate the software document for that feature, or to check the minimum software requirements of Cisco IOS XE software with the hardware installed on your router.

You must be a registered user on Cisco.com to access this tool.

Software release notes

See the release notes for information about:

- Memory recommendations.
- Open and resolved severity 1 and 2 caveats.

Release notes are intended to be release-specific for the most current release, and the information provided in these documents may not be cumulative in providing information about features that first appeared in previous releases. For cumulative feature information, see Cisco Feature Navigator at: <http://www.cisco.com/go/cfn/>.



CHAPTER 4

Basic router configuration

This chapter contains these sections:

- [IR8140H interface names, on page 27](#)
- [Verify basic configuration of router, on page 28](#)
- [Configure global parameters, on page 34](#)
- [Configure Gigabit Ethernet interface, on page 35](#)
- [Configure sub-interface on GigabitEthernet0/0/0, on page 36](#)
- [Configure a loopback interface, on page 37](#)
- [Cisco Discovery Protocol for security, on page 38](#)
- [Configure command-line access, on page 38](#)
- [Configure a static route, on page 40](#)
- [Configuring dynamic routes, on page 41](#)
- [Modular QoS CLIs, on page 43](#)
- [Configuring VLANs, on page 43](#)

IR8140H interface names

The supported hardware interfaces and their naming conventions are as given in the table.

Table 5: IR8140H hardware interfaces and naming conventions

Hardware interface	Naming convention
Gigabit Ethernet ports	GigabitEthernet0/0/0 GigabitEthernet0/0/1
Cellular Interface	Cellular0/2/0 Cellular0/2/1 Cellular0/3/0 Cellular0/3/1
mSATA SSD	msata
GPIO	alarm contact 1-2

Hardware interface	Naming convention
WPAN	Wpan0/1/0

Verify basic configuration of router

The basic configuration is a result of the entries you made during the initial configuration dialog. This means the router has at least one interface set with an IP address to be reachable, either through WebUI or to allow the PnP process to work.

Procedure

Use the **show running-config** command to view the initial configuration.

Example:

```
IR8140H# show running-config
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 16150 bytes
!
! Last configuration change at 19:21:02 UTC Thu Nov 19 2020
!
version 17.5
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime msec
service internal
service call-home
platform qfp utilization monitor load 80
platform punt-keepalive disable-kernel-core
!
hostname IR8140H
!
boot-start-marker
boot system bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_POLARIS_DEV_LATEST_20201108_112843.SSA.bin
boot-end-marker
!
!
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authorization exec default local
aaa authorization network FlexVPN_Author local
!
aaa session-id common
!
ip domain name cisco.com
!
login on-success log
!
subscriber templating
!
multilink bundle-name authenticated
!
chat-script lte "" "AT!CALL" TIMEOUT 20 "OK"
chat-script hspa-R7 "" "AT!SCACT=1,1" TIMEOUT 60 "OK"
!
```



```

!
crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-1536777273
  enrollment selfsigned
  subject-name cn=IOS-Self-Signed-Certificate-1536777273
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair TP-self-signed-1536777273
!
crypto pki trustpoint SLA-TrustPoint
  enrollment pkcs12
  revocation-check crl
!
crypto pki trustpoint LDevID
  enrollment retry count 4
  enrollment retry period 2
  enrollment mode ra
  enrollment profile LDevID
  serial-number none
  fqdn none
  ip-address none
  password
  fingerprint 7107DAB5FBDAC555893B7C047D202B5676F6C9AB
  subject-name serialNumber=PID:IR8140H-P-K9 SN:FDO2420J78D,CN= IR8140H
  revocation-check none
  rsakeypair LDevID 2048
!
crypto pki profile enrollment LDevID
  enrollment url http://172.27.127.21/certsrv/mscep/mscep.dll
!
crypto pki certificate map FlexVPN_Cert_Map 1
  issuer-name co cn = sit-dc-sit-dc-ca
!
crypto pki certificate chain TP-self-signed-1536777273
  certificate self-signed 01
    30820330 30820218 A0030201 02020101 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 05050030
    31312F30 2D060355 04031326 494F532D 53656C66 2D536967 6E65642D 43657274
    69666963 6174652D 31353336 37373732 3733301E 170D3230 31313137 32323237
    33325A17 0D333031 31313732 32323733 325A3031 312F302D 06035504 03132649
    4F532D53 656C662D 5369676E 65642D43 65727469 66696361 74652D31 35333637
    37373237 33308201 22300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 01010500 0382010F 00308201
    0A028201 01008D4E BBE387AB 5FE56CF9 77532A82 554176A9 3F13D193 729E1C9D
    0E9AC390 D66E845E 78AFEBFE 09DD0848 15DE936F E18FB64D 85E97E52 87412474
    DE16C42B 3101B84E 8C4F14C4 67EF8867 4AEE4996 6229CFBD 15556C90 F37C1C3D
    4D77A046 5934F3C9 6A98DDEE E4413E33 0F260D52 2EBB88C6 C0A1D9DC 633D13BB
    0DAC3ACD 6C980F61 C6521868 52EA0150 95C33DB0 26C0AB56 6CB67AD1 401CBBDD
    D1994822 1337B943 019F9EDF 4FC72749 01B66A31 ACD60696 14AF9A68 3D7578F1
    7BFE63CE A0D4A2F3 DA577B90 15C875EA F175CA24 B17E15A7 9C892E54 1D960D71
    907D4D23 2CE67E1A 720AA7A6 9EE1EFEE 12A26353 B258FECB CBAC3FF2 95DAC73D
    BBEC1F9E E1030203 010001A3 53305130 0F060355 1D130101 FF040530 030101FF
    301F0603 551D2304 18301680 14A1A44D ABD867DC 26C5B2F2 3A8D9504 807FFA9C
    E6301D06 03551D0E 04160414 A1A44DAB D867DC26 C5B2F23A 8D950480 7FFA9CE6
    300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 05050003 82010100 267416FA CF69B1CD 96825C67
    483D698D 2B2838E5 94CDA5ED DA5E6BC0 E45739F9 676A4828 32FA2FDE C613BE3D
    6B00BA4B 97F52155 966726BE B02D6E48 685190E6 2AF094BC E2A4C087 B5F2449B
    4BFF2329 FD4D222D C11C3F73 727FD13C 901C51D0 3F08C6BA C6415D2F 078907E5
    D8CCCB8F E28D9485 D2AA4F6D 300A7A2D 289F5E49 79637E6D 7B678332 EEFF2E80
    E344AB7C F0FC70D5 694C0CC3 DB9F62E5 2A050979 E9171466 81CC91BA A99AB7C7
    12CACA37 D196D178 E349C627 597CFA9C 49132F8A 17C2F471 7E9D80E5 B7D5E673
    A225E086 F6E523AC 0C565E9A 3A7E1610 4275D2B7 9AFD5703 F5E1A8E0 94E53C1B
    ADF8644D EF0541A8 E98A1F41 A3A6F208 920EAE57
    quit
crypto pki certificate chain SLA-TrustPoint
  certificate ca 01
    30820321 30820209 A0030201 02020101 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 0B050030
    32310E30 0C060355 040A1305 43697363 6F312030 1E060355 04031317 43697363

```

Verify basic configuration of router

```

6F204C69 63656E73 696E6720 526F6F74 20434130 1E170D31 33303533 30313934
3834375A 170D3338 30353330 31393438 34375A30 32310E30 0C060355 040A1305
43697363 6F312030 1E060355 04031317 43697363 6F204C69 63656E73 696E6720
526F6F74 20434130 82012230 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010101 05000382 010F0030
82010A02 82010100 A6BCBD96 131E05F7 145EA72C 2CD686E6 17222EA1 F1EFF64D
CBB4C798 212AA147 C655D8D7 9471380D 8711441E 1AAF071A 9CAE6388 8A38E520
1C394D78 462EF239 C659F715 B98C0A59 5BBB5CBD 0CFEBEA3 700A8BF7 D8F256EE
4AA4E80D DB6FD1C9 60B1FD18 FFC69C96 6FA68957 A2617DE7 104FDC5F EA2956AC
7390A3EB 2B5436AD C847A2C5 DAB553EB 69A9A535 58E9F3E3 C0BD23CF 58BD7188
68E69491 20F320E7 948E71D7 AE3BCC84 F10684C7 4BC8E00F 539BA42B 42C68BB7
C7479096 B4CB2D62 EA2F505D C7B062A4 6811D95B E8250FC4 5D5D5FB8 8F27D191
C55F0D76 61F9A4CD 3D992327 A8BB03BD 4E6D7069 7CBADF8B DF5F4368 95135E44
DFC7C6CF 04DD7FD1 02030100 01A34230 40300E06 03551D0F 0101FF04 04030201
06300F06 03551D13 0101FF04 05300301 01FF301D 0603551D 0E041604 1449DC85
4B3D31E5 1B3E6A17 606AF333 3D3B4C73 E8300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 010B0500
03820101 00507F24 D3932A66 86025D9F E838AE5C 6D4DF6B0 49631C78 240DA905
604EDCDE FF4FED2B 77FC460E CD636FDB DD44681E 3A5673AB 9093D3B1 6C9E3D8B
D98987BF E40CBD9E 1AECA0C2 2189BB5C 8FA85686 CD98B646 5575B146 8DFC66A8
467A3DF4 4D565700 6ADF0F0D CF835015 3C04FF7C 21E878AC 11BA9CD2 55A9232C
7CA7B7E6 C1AF74F6 152E99B7 B1FCF9BB E973DE7F 5BDDEB86 C71E3B49 1765308B
5FB0DA06 B92AFE7F 494E8A9E 07B85737 F3A58BE1 1A48A229 C37C1E69 39F08678
80DDCD16 D6BACECA EEBC7CF9 8428787B 35202CDC 60E4616A B623CDBD 230E3AFB
418616A9 4093E049 4D10AB75 27E86F73 932E35B5 8862FDAE 0275156F 719BB2F0
D697DF7F 28
quit
crypto pki certificate chain LDevID
certificate 5B00005DA8024836ED49AF77AE000000005DA8
308205B1 30820499 A0030201 0202135B 00005DA8 024836ED 49AF77AE 00000000
5DA8300D 06092A86 4886F70D 01010B05 00305F31 13301106 0A099226 8993F22C
64011916 03636F6D 31153013 060A0992 268993F2 2C640119 16056369 73636F31
16301406 0A099226 8993F22C 64011916 06736974 2D646331 19301706 03550403
13107369 742D6463 2D534954 2D44432D 43413020 170D3230 31313139 31383531
30395A18 0F323036 30313130 39313835 3130395A 30463128 30260603 55040513
1F504944 3A495238 31343048 2D502D4B 3920534E 3A46444F 32343230 4A373844
311A3018 06035504 030C1143 41424F5F 5349545F 43656C6C 756C6172 30820122
300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 01050003 82010F00 3082010A 02820101 00BC58AA
810C8701 09F8B90F 2DE268BF 0CA253E8 605494F2 6A6E7FA9 387ED47B BA89C51B
D549F4A5 16A64C04 C443A752 719A7624 DEB96B0F 898CECB5 05F7E32C 83D2FB4D
1E87F7C0 4CCE92FC 152579FB F1974517 A2B4B05A 2B72CCF8 6FE2583F D25AE93E
8C695806 13146E94 5B97810F 4BC6E125 78A14A68 24682979 B4ACC67D 7F58D50E
3170D595 6DE90AD2 9CC37663 6FD9CE7B 5EB425D9 6220E0B4 705ECD1A AEA21BA6
2071DDAB 21E4D3DC 7E83C843 D8532C6E 41939E56 A510B8F5 0A04CA8F 3F0F6EAE
596E54C5 5FBFD7E2 70975CB7 5D081F63 F236C694 E7A4CCDD CB1FB336 CB07DD66
52CC830D F82A684C B74FEC5D 849E0E58 6FA575D1 9F7477BD 04B1354F 77020301
0001A382 027B3082 0277300B 0603551D 0F040403 0204F030 1D060355 1D0E0416
04147B0F 6A00A9E8 A6DBB59A 33FD0F6C E0D9913A 7E31301F 0603551D 23041830
16801422 A59DB25D 909EDA07 4C0039B5 9575B3F8 898F5330 81D50603 551D1F04
81CD3081 CA3081C7 A081C4A0 81C18681 BE6C6461 703A2F2F 2F434E3D 7369742D
64632D53 49542D44 432D4341 2C434E3D 7369742D 64632C43 4E3D4344 502C434E
3D507562 6C696325 32304B65 79253230 53657276 69636573 2C434E3D 53657276
69636573 2C434E3D 436F6E66 69677572 6174696F 6E2C4443 3D736974 2D64632C
44433D63 6973636F 2C44433D 636F6D3F 63657274 69666963 61746552 65766F63
6174696F 6E4C6973 743F6261 73653F6F 626A6563 74436C61 73733D63 524C4469
73747269 62757469 6F6E506F 696E7430 81CA0608 2B060105 05070101 0481BD30
81BA3081 B706082B 06010505 07300286 81AA6C64 61703A2F 2F2F434E 3D736974
2D64632D 5349542D 44432D43 412C434E 3D414941 2C434E3D 5075626C 69632532
304B6579 25323053 65727669 6365732C 434E3D53 65727669 6365732C 434E3D43
6F6E6669 67757261 74696F6E 2C44433D 7369742D 64632C44 433D6369 73636F2C
44433D63 6F6D3F63 41436572 74696669 63617465 3F626173 653F6F62 64656374
436C6173 733D6365 72746966 69636174 696F6E41 7574686F 72697479 303B0609
2B060104 01823715 07042E30 2C06242B 06010401 82371508 8593BB6B 85858C6C
8289810E 86C7AC03 E7EF037D 84B1A57E B4FB3402 01640201 07301D06 03551D25
04163014 06082B06 01050507 03010608 2B060105 05070302 30270609 2B060104
01823715 0A041A30 18300A06 082B0601 05050703 01300A06 082B0601 05050703

```

```

02300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 010B0500 03820101 007D1625 49EB4FA2 199A95B5
F6E4AD0C 4D410FCB D8EDF68A D7688929 E9F54074 1EBEE52C FEC28615 7E8180D2
20614BD2 FC5CB729 8480F6C4 5344435E A16A27B8 2D063A7E 0F2E5717 30FBE32C
4365B580 3FF828F1 006AA660 FFD06854 DCB5808E 8A4B233B 2A2F9ED8 5C2178C8
C57F0AEC FB6F78DF C47540CE 26CC41C0 F28DF410 A12A1EC0 EBFA6584 3823620E
63841662 995759C0 5F066DC0 F1E90319 CB0CC687 B25115C1 B0E41D2B D96A84FE
E0CC0784 135BCB64 F899761D 95A6ACA0 C0B8347F 148D1D94 C6194166 60C752D1
A788C236 524599E0 90B650A8 B2DE7861 B2CABBAA 43531F78 20C0626A 010E4C67
DD1A5E64 BBAE382B C38AA018 737F81DA 3A80726E 4C
quit
certificate ca 118989AFB1C4AD944B97A1CD898BD73B
3082039B 30820283 A0030201 02021011 8989AFB1 C4AD944B 97A1CD89 8BD73B30
0D06092A 864886F7 0D01010B 0500305F 31133011 060A0992 268993F2 2C640119
1603636F 6D311530 13060A09 92268993 F22C6401 19160563 6973636F 31163014
060A0992 268993F2 2C640119 16067369 742D6463 31193017 06035504 03131073
69742D64 632D5349 542D4443 2D434130 20170D31 38303932 35313134 3735335A
180F3230 36383039 32353131 35373533 5A305F31 13301106 0A099226 8993F22C
64011916 03636F6D 31153013 060A0992 268993F2 2C640119 16056369 73636F31
16301406 0A099226 8993F22C 64011916 06736974 2D646331 19301706 03550403
13107369 742D6463 2D534954 2D44432D 43413082 0122300D 06092A86 4886F70D
01010105 00038201 0F003082 010A0282 010100AF 6FB5E529 DEF701CD E5ACB737
D2790873 875E9DBB 53ADAFC2 94C3D991 EC658A69 B1AB69BA C32307BE BF9D225D
4FEADF33 F396AB70 A4E49526 AE637FE4 6BA0BB32 C98528D0 94658C48 DBE550A1
ECA35F7A 4279F16C 5F3C2B11 185F95BB 9D68B2C9 82ECB523 BC3E5833 436BD1D1
AE9616BD 1E0FC85D 67EF135B 6BC68840 3103DA89 923156FC EADD0914 3DD1F75E
B166E550 A9F0FBEA 80DDE1F4 1B4D7789 3872EEA0 5B375344 03CDDFBA 72DC6F53
6C3D25A3 BF8E215F 8D55C8D1 D0C279ED 9E061673 3FC6F225 6C405AA3 E6B96310
4C2798A9 EC561A29 FF875907 B3527352 61A09CF2 D7916631 1F5215E5 6077E8C4
A5042B6E 3039B222 BCFA1133 53FA51AD 2E972D02 03010001 A351304F 300B0603
551D0F04 04030201 86300F06 03551D13 0101FF04 05300301 01FF301D 0603551D
0E041604 1422A59D B25D909E DA074C00 39B59575 B3F8898F 53301006 092B0601
04018237 15010403 02010030 0D06092A 864886F7 0D01010B 05000382 01010039
6F03857F 8B5F0A38 E6DFA0E9 8598FE40 9231C4DF 5D747EA8 B968606B DD1593A8
2348303C 7948DD69 1FDEA891 2A249CCC 9B9C9071 D51B1AC6 EF1567EF 64E8C11A
85BDA86C AC45954E 7A86861C 1D7C622B 2211652C C8CC6359 09000B78 0E6ABF6E
06D4247B 572E91B2 1216BC9A 5D715B8D E3220C4B 4B6B1B1A 3AA4B2CB 67F7F6B5
2B3D9820 0E5A50A3 123E41F5 3C0D46E0 63E7212B 4730D9DA 4E0E8227 AEEAE386
3C1A1B3A C680B486 5F71B0B5 80C82F6C 58126809 39193ABF D145BA7D 4D695762
5DB055D4 077E779D AEA96655 576B3085 0CD9E01F 6805EF8B 494EE44B 16ACEED8
F6529B1F AA324C9F 464FA153 9DAF12C1 74872179 1DA83009 26D36774 77C52F
Quit
!
no license feature hseck9
license udi pid IR8140H-P-K9 sn FDO2441J91D
license boot level network-advantage
memory free low-watermark processor 47507
!
diagnostic bootup level minimal
!
spanning-tree extend system-id
!
!
redundancy
mode none
!
!
crypto ikev2 authorization policy FlexVPN_Author_Policy
route set interface
route set access-list FlexVPN_Client_IPv4_LAN
!
crypto ikev2 proposal FlexVPN_IKEv2_Proposal
encryption aes-cbc-256
integrity sha256
group 14

```

```

!
crypto ikev2 policy FlexVPN_IKEv2_Policy
proposal FlexVPN_IKEv2_Proposal
!
!
crypto ikev2 profile FlexVPN_IKEv2_Profile
match certificate FlexVPN_Cert_Map
identity local dn
authentication remote rsa-sig
authentication local rsa-sig
pki trustpoint LDevID
dpd 120 3 periodic
aaa authorization group cert list FlexVPN_Author FlexVPN_Author_Policy
!
crypto ikev2 dpd 60 10 periodic
crypto ikev2 client flexvpn FlexVPN_Client_2
peer 1 103.0.0.254
client connect Tunnel2
!
crypto ikev2 client flexvpn FlexVPN_Client_1
peer 1 102.0.0.254
client connect Tunnel1
!
!
controller Cellular 0/2/0
!
controller Cellular 0/3/0
!
crypto ipsec transform-set FlexVPN_IPsec_Transform_Set esp-aes 256 esp-sha256-hmac
mode tunnel
!
crypto ipsec profile FlexVPN_IPsec_Profile
set transform-set FlexVPN_IPsec_Transform_Set
set pfs group14
set ikev2-profile FlexVPN_IKEv2_Profile
!
interface Loopback1
ip address 12.12.12.12 255.255.255.255
!
interface Tunnel1
ip unnumbered Loopback1
tunnel source Cellular0/2/0
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile FlexVPN_IPsec_Profile
!
interface Tunnel2
ip unnumbered Loopback1
tunnel source Cellular0/3/0
tunnel destination dynamic
tunnel protection ipsec profile FlexVPN_IPsec_Profile
!
interface VirtualPortGroup1
ip address 192.168.11.1 255.255.255.0
no mop enabled
no mop sysid
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
ip address 172.27.127.74 255.255.255.128
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
no ip address
shutdown
negotiation auto

```

```
!  
interface Cellular0/2/0  
  ip address negotiated  
  ip access-group 1 out  
  ip tcp adjust-mss 1460  
  load-interval 30  
  dialer in-band  
  dialer idle-timeout 0  
  dialer-group 1  
  ipv6 enable  
  pulse-time 1  
  ip virtual-reassembly  
!  
interface Cellular0/2/1  
  no ip address  
!  
interface Cellular0/3/0  
  ip address negotiated  
  ip access-group 1 out  
  ip tcp adjust-mss 1460  
  load-interval 30  
  dialer in-band  
  dialer idle-timeout 0  
  dialer-group 2  
  ipv6 enable  
  pulse-time 1  
  ip virtual-reassembly  
!  
interface Cellular0/3/1  
  no ip address  
!  
interface WPAN0/1/0  
  no ip address  
  arp timeout 0  
  no mop enabled  
  no mop sysid  
!  
no ip http server  
ip http auth-retry 3 time-window 1  
ip http authentication local  
ip http secure-server  
ip forward-protocol nd  
ip route 102.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 Cellular0/2/0 192.168.5.1  
ip route 103.0.0.0 255.255.255.0 Cellular0/3/0 192.168.4.1  
ip route 192.168.4.0 255.255.255.0 Cellular0/3/0  
ip route 192.168.5.0 255.255.255.0 Cellular0/2/0  
!  
ip access-list standard FlexVPN_Client_IPv4_LAN  
  10 permit 192.168.11.0 0.0.0.255  
  20 permit 12.12.12.12  
!  
!  
ip access-list standard 1  
  10 permit any  
dialer-list 1 protocol ip permit  
dialer-list 1 protocol ipv6 permit  
!  
snmp-server enable traps wpan  
!  
control-plane  
!  
mgcp behavior rsip-range tgcp-only  
mgcp behavior comedia-role none
```

```

mgcp behavior comedia-check-media-src disable
mgcp behavior comedia-sdp-force disable
!
mgcp profile default
!
line con 0
  stopbits 1
line vty 0 4
  transport input ssh
line vty 5 14
  transport input ssh
!
call-home
  ! If contact email address in call-home is configured as sch-smart-licensing@cisco.com
  ! the email address configured in Cisco Smart License Portal will be used as contact email
  address to send SCH notifications.
  contact-email-addr sch-smart-licensing@cisco.com
  profile "CiscoTAC-1"
  active
  destination transport-method http
app-hosting appid iperf
app-vnic gateway0 virtualportgroup 1 guest-interface 0
  guest-ipaddress 192.168.11.2 netmask 255.255.255.0
  app-default-gateway 192.168.11.1 guest-interface 0
end

```

Configure global parameters

To configure global parameters for your router, follow these steps.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode when using the console port.

Example:

```

Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#

```

- Step 2** Connect to the router with a remote terminal.

Example:

```

telnet router-name or address
Login: login-id
Password: *****
Router> enable

```

- Step 3** Use the **hostname** *name* command to specify the name for the router.

Example:

```

Router(config)# hostname Router

```

Specifies the name for the router.

- Step 4** Use the **enable password** *password* or **enable secret password** *password* command to specify a password to prevent unauthorized access to the router

Example:

```
Router(config)# enable password cr1ny5ho
```

Note

In this form of the command, password is not encrypted. To encrypt the password, use enable secret password as noted in the previously mentioned Device Hardening Guide.

Configure Gigabit Ethernet interface

The router features two Gigabit Ethernet (GE) ports that can be used to enable WAN connectivity to a primary substation or a control center.

- One GigE Copper port (RJ45) on the midplane board. It supports standard 3-speed (10/100/1000) Ethernet features including auto-MDIX.
- One SFP socket. It supports standard 1000Base-X or 100Base-FX Ethernet over single-mode or multi-mode fiber.

To configure the Gigabit Ethernet interface, follow these steps:

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.
- Step 2** Use the **ipv6 unicast-routing** command to enable forwarding of IPv6 unicast data packets.
- Example:**
- ```
Router#configure terminal
Router(config)# ipv6 unicast-routing
```
- Step 3** Use the **interface GigabitEthernet** *slot/bay/port* command to enter the configuration mode for an interface on the router.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0
```
- Enters the configuration mode for an interface on the router.
- Step 4** Use the **ip address** *ip-address* *mask* command to set the IP address and subnet mask for the specified interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ip address 192.168.12.2 255.255.255.0
```
- Note**
- You can use this step if you are configuring an IPv4 address.

- Step 5** Use the **ip address** *ipv6-address/prefix* command to set the IPv6 address and prefix for the specified interface.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001.db8::ffff:1/128
```

**Note**

Use this step instead of Step 2, if you are configuring an IPv6 address. IPv6 unicast-routing needs to be set up as well, see further information in the **IPv6 Addressing and Basic Connectivity Configuration Guide**. For more information, see [https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipv6\\_basic/configuration/xr-16-10/ip6b-xr-16-10-book/read-me-first.html](https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipv6_basic/configuration/xr-16-10/ip6b-xr-16-10-book/read-me-first.html).

- Step 6** Use the **no shutdown** command to enable the interface and change its state from administratively down to administratively up.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

- Step 7** Use the **exit** command to exit the configuration mode of the interface and return to the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-if)# exit
```

## Configure sub-interface on GigabitEthernet0/0/0

Cisco IOS XE supports sub-interfaces and dot1q configuration on the g0/0/0 interface.

### Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router> enable
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)#
```

- Step 2** Use the **interface g0/0/0.?** command to enter the sub-interface mode to configure a sub-interface and dot1q encapsulation on the GigabitEthernet0/0/0 interface.

**Example:**

```
Router(config)# interface g0/0/0.? <1-4294967295> GigabitEthernet interface number
Router(config-subif)#
```

- Step 3** Use the **encapsulation ?** command to configure the sub-interface and **dot1q** encapsulation on the GigabitEthernet0/0/0 interface.

**Example:**



```
Router(config-subif)# encapsulation ? dot1Q IEEE 802.1Q Virtual LAN
```

## Configure a loopback interface

### Before you begin

The loopback interface acts as a placeholder for the static IP address and provides default routing information.

To configure a loopback interface, follow these steps.

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode
- Step 2** Use the **interface** *type number* command to enter the configuration mode on the loopback interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# interface Loopback 0
```
- Step 3** (Option 1) Use the **ip address** *ip-address mask* command to set the IP address and subnet mask on the loopback interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.108.1.1 255.255.255.0
```
- Note**  
If you are configuring an IPv6 address, you can use the **ipv6 address** *ipv6-address/prefix* command.
- Step 4** (Option 2) Use the **ipv6 address** *ipv6-address/prefix* command to set the IPv6 address and prefix on the loopback interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ipv6 address 2001:db8::ffff:1/128
```
- Step 5** Use the **exit** command to exit the loopback interface mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# exit
```
- Step 6** Use the **show interface loopback** command to verify the loopback interface configuration.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# show interface loopback 0
Loopback0 is up, line protocol is up
Hardware is Loopback
Internet address is 192.0.2.0/16
MTU 1514 bytes, BW 8000000 Kbit, DLY 5000 usec,
reliability 255/255, txload 1/255, rxload 1/255
Encapsulation LOOPBACK, loopback not set
Last input never, output never, output hang never
Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
Queueing strategy: fifo
Output queue 0/0, 0 drops; input queue 0/75, 0 drops
```

```

5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 no buffer
Received 0 broadcasts, 0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles
0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 underruns
0 output errors, 0 collisions, 0 interface resets
0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out

```

Cisco Discovery Protocol for security

CDP is enabled by default on the router. It may be disabled if needed for security purposes.

For more information on using CDP, see [Cisco Discovery Protocol Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3S](#).

Configure command-line access

To configure parameters to control access to the router, follow these steps.



Note Transport input must be set as explained in the previous Telnet and SSH sections of the guide.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **line** *[aux | console | tty | vty] line-number* command to enter the line configuration mode, and specify the type of line.

Example:

```
Router(config)# line console 0
```

Note

The example provided here specifies a console terminal for access.

Step 2 Use the **password** *password* command to specify a unique password for the console terminal line.

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# password 5dr4Hepw3
```

Step 3 Use the **login** command to enable password checking at terminal session login.

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# login
```

Step 4 Use the **exec-timeout** *minutes [seconds]* command to set the interval during which the EXEC command interpreter waits until user input is detected.

Example:

```
Router(config-line)# exec-timeout 5 30
Router(config-line)#
```

Note

- The default is 10 minutes. Optionally, adds seconds to the interval value.

The example provided here shows a timeout of 5 minutes and 30 seconds. Entering a timeout of **0 0** specifies never to time out.

Step 5 **exit****Example:**

```
Router(config-line)# exit
```

Exits line configuration mode to re-enter global configuration mode.

Step 6 Use the **line [aux | console | tty | vty] line-number** command to specify a virtual terminal for remote console access.**Example:**

```
Router(config)# line vty 0 4
Router(config-line)#
```

Step 7 Use the **password password** command to specifies a unique password for the virtual terminal line.**Example:**

```
Router(config-line)# password aldf2ad1
```

Step 8 Use the **login** command to enables password checking at the virtual terminal session login.**Example:**

```
Router(config-line)# login
```

Step 9 Use the **end** command to exit line configuration mode, and returns to privileged EXEC mode.**Example:**

```
Router(config-line)# end
```

- a) Use the **show running-config** command to verify the loopback interface configuration.

Example:

```
!
line console 0
exec-timeout 10 0
password 4youreyesonly
login
transport input none (
    default
)
topbits 1 (
    default
)
line vty 0 4
password secret
login
!
```

Note

- The transport input none is the default, but if SSH is enabled this must be set to ssh.
- You do not have to input the commands marked **default**.

Configure a static route

Static routes provide fixed routing paths through the network. They are manually configured on the router. update the static route with a new one. Static routes are private routes unless they are redistributed by a routing protocol.

Before you begin

To configure static routes, follow these steps.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** (Option 1) Use the **ip route** *prefix mask { ip-address | interface-type interface-number [ip-address]* command to specify a static route for IP packets.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip route 192.10.2.3 255.255.0.0 10.10.10.2
```

Note

If you are configuring an IPv6 address, use the **ipv6 route** command.

- Step 2** (Option 2) Use the **ipv6 route** *prefix/mask { ipv6-address | interface-type interface-number [ipv6-address]* command to specify a static route for IP packets.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ipv6 route 2001:db8:2::/64 2001:db8:3::0
```

Note

See additional information for IPv6 here: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/ipv6_basic/configuration/xr-16-10/ipv6b-xr-16-10-book/read-me-first.html

- Step 3** Use the **end** command to exit global configuration mode and enter privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# end
```

After configuring static routes, the router will use the specified paths for routing IP or IPv6 packets. You can verify the configuration using the appropriate show commands.

- Step 4** Use the **show ip route** (or **show ipv6 route**) command to verify static routing configuration.

For IPv4 address:

Example:

```
Router# show ip route
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route
Gateway of last resort is not set
10.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
C      10.108.1.0 is directly connected, Loopback0
S*     0.0.0.0/0 is directly connected, GigabitEthernet0
```

For IPv6 address:

Example:

```
Router# show ipv6 route
IPv6 Routing Table - default - 5 entries
Codes: C - Connected, L - Local, S - Static, U - Per-user Static route
B - BGP, R - RIP, H - NHRP, I1 - ISIS L1
I2 - ISIS L2, IA - ISIS interarea, IS - ISIS summary, D - EIGRP
EX - EIGRP external, ND - ND Default, NDp - ND Prefix, DCE -
Destination
NDr - Redirect, O - OSPF Intra, OI - OSPF Inter, OE1 - OSPF ext 1
OE2 - OSPF ext 2, ON1 - OSPF NSSA ext 1, ON2 - OSPF NSSA ext 2
ls - LISP site, ld - LISP dyn-EID, a - Application
C    2001:DB8:3::/64 [0/0]
via GigabitEthernet0/0/2, directly connected
S    2001:DB8:2::/64 [1/0]
via 2001:DB8:3::1
```

Note

- In the example, the static route sends out all IP packets with a destination IP address of 192.168.1.0 and a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0 on the Gigabit Ethernet interface to another device with an IP address of 10.10.10.2. Specifically, the packets are sent to the configured PVC.
- You do not need to enter the command marked **default**. This command appears automatically in the configuration file generated when you use the **running-config** command.

Configuring dynamic routes

In dynamic routing, the network protocol adjusts the path automatically, based on network traffic or topology.

Changes in dynamic routes are shared with other routers in the network.

For more information on Cisco IOS-XE configuration guides, see <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/ios-nx-os-software/ios-xe-amsterdam-17-3-1/model.html>.

Configure routing information protocol

To configure the RIP on a router, follow these steps.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **router rip** command to enter router configuration mode, and enable RIP on the router.

Example:

```
Router(config)# router rip
```

Step 2 Use the **version { 1 | 2 }** command to specify use of RIP version 1 or 2.

Example:

```
Router(config-router)# version 2
```

Step 3 Use the **network ip-address** command to specify a list of networks on which RIP is to be applied, using the address of the network of each directly connected network.

Example:

```
Router(config-router)# network 192.168.1.1
Router(config-router)# network 10.10.7.1
```

Step 4 Use the **no auto-summary** command to disable automatic summarization of subnet routes into network-level routes.

Example:

```
Router(config-router)# no auto-summary
```

Note

It allows sub prefix routing information to pass across classful network boundaries.

Step 5 Use the **end** command to exit router configuration mode, and enters privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-router)# end
```

Step 6 Use the **show ip route** command to verify RIP configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show ip route
Codes: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, M - mobile, B - BGP
D - EIGRP, EX - EIGRP external, O - OSPF, IA - OSPF inter area
N1 - OSPF NSSA external type 1, N2 - OSPF NSSA external type 2
E1 - OSPF external type 1, E2 - OSPF external type 2
i - IS-IS, su - IS-IS summary, L1 - IS-IS level-1, L2 - IS-IS level-2
ia - IS-IS inter area, * - candidate default, U - per-user static route
o - ODR, P - periodic downloaded static route
Gateway of last resort is not set
10.0.0.0/24 is subnetted, 1 subnets
C      10.108.1.0 is directly connected, Loopback0
R      3.0.0.0/8 [120/1] via 2.2.2.1, 00:00:02, Ethernet0/0/0
```

Note

You can look for RIP routes marked with the letter R.

Enhanced interior gateway routing protocol

The Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP) is an enhanced version of the Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (IGRP) developed by Cisco.

- EIGRP offers improved convergence properties and operating efficiency compared to IGRP.
- IGRP is now considered obsolete.
- EIGRP uses the Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL) to guarantee loop-free operation and synchronize devices during topology changes.

Convergence and Efficiency in EIGRP

EIGRP's convergence technology is based on the Diffusing Update Algorithm (DUAL), which ensures loop-free operation and device synchronization during route computations.



Note Devices that are not affected by topology changes are not involved in recomputations.

For more information on configuring Enhanced Interior Gateway Routing Protocol (EIGRP), see https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/ios-xml/ios/iproute_eigrp/configuration/xe-16-10/ire-xe-16-10-book/ire-enhanced-igrp.html.

Modular QoS CLIs

Modular QoS CLI (MQC) is a standardized approach for configuring Quality of Service (QoS) features on Cisco routing and switching platforms, including the IoT Integrated Services Router.

- MQC provides a consistent method to enable and manage QoS across Cisco devices.
- It is used on both routing and switching platforms.
- MQC is the primary interface for configuring QoS features on the IoT Integrated Services Router.

Overview and Reference for Modular QoS CLI (MQC)

MQC is the method by which all QoS features are configured on the IoT Integrated Services Router.

For more details, see [QoS Modular QoS Command-Line Interface Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE 17](#).

Configuring VLANs

A VLAN is a switched network that is logically segmented by function or application, without regard to the physical locations of the users. VLANs have the same attributes as physical LANs. However, you can group end-stations even if they are not physically located on the same LAN segment. Any device port can belong to a VLAN, unicast, broadcast, and multicast packets are forwarded and flooded only to end-stations in the VLAN.

Each VLAN is considered a logical network, and packets destined for stations that do not belong to the VLAN must be forwarded through a router or a device supporting fallback bridging. In a device stack, VLANs can be formed with ports across the stack. Because a VLAN is considered a separate logical network, it contains its own bridge Management Information Base (MIB) information and can support its own implementation of spanning tree.

VLANs are often associated with IP subnetworks. For example, all the end stations in a particular IP subnet belong to the same VLAN. Interface VLAN membership on the device is assigned manually on an interface-by-interface basis. When you assign device interfaces to VLANs by using this method, it is known as interface-based, or static, VLAN membership.

The device can route traffic between VLANs by using device virtual interfaces (SVIs). An SVI must be explicitly configured and assigned an IP address to route traffic between VLANs.



Note IR8140 routers have reserved a set of VLANs 2350 to 2449 for internal platform use. It is not allowed to add the reserved VLANs. You must ensure that these VLANs are not used in the network.



CHAPTER 5

Configuring Secure Shell

This section provides the necessary information to configure Secure Shell on network devices.

- [Secure Shell, on page 45](#)
- [How to Configure Secure Shell, on page 47](#)
- [Secure copy, on page 52](#)
- [Additional references, on page 54](#)

Secure Shell

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device.

SSH provides more security for remote connections than Telnet does by providing strong encryption when a device is authenticated. This software release supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).

Prerequisites for configuring Secure Shell

Secure Shell (SSH) prerequisites are the mandatory configuration and software requirements that must be met before the device can support secure remote connections.

- An RSA public/private key pair must be generated on the device.
- An IPsec encryption software image (DES or 3DES) must be installed for both the SSH server and client.
- A valid hostname and host domain must be configured using global configuration commands.

Configuration requirements for Secure Shell

To successfully configure the device for SSH, ensure the following settings are applied:

- Configure the device identity by using the **hostname** and **ip domain-name** commands in global configuration mode.

Restrictions for configuring Secure Shell

Provides the necessary constraints and configuration requirements for enabling secure shell on the IR8100.

These are restrictions for configuring the IR8100 for secure shell.

- The router supports RSA authentication.
- SSH supports only the execution-shell application.
- The SSH server and the SSH client are supported only on Data Encryption Standard (DES) (56-bit) and 3DES (168-bit) data encryption software. In DES software images, DES is the only encryption algorithm available. In 3DES software images, both DES and 3DES encryption algorithms are available.
- This software release supports IP Security (IPSec).
- The IR8100 supports the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) encryption algorithm with a 128-bit key, 192-bit key, or 256-bit key. However, symmetric cipher AES to encrypt the keys is not supported.
- The login banner is not supported in Secure Shell Version 1. It is supported in Secure Shell Version 2, which Cisco recommends due to its better security.
- The **-l** keyword and **userid : {number} {ip-address}** delimiter and arguments are mandatory when configuring the alternative method of Reverse SSH for console access.



Note Cisco highly recommends the 3DES encryption as it is stronger.

See the Cisco IOS-XE Device hardening guide at <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/docs/ip/access-lists/13608-21.html> for details.

SSH and router access

Secure Shell (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, remote connection to a device.

- Provides more security for remote connections than Telnet by using strong encryption.
- Supports SSH Version 1 (SSHv1) and SSH Version 2 (SSHv2).
- Functions consistently in both IPv4 and IPv6, supporting IPv6 addresses and secure transport.

SSH servers, integrated clients, and supported versions

The SSH Integrated Client is an application that runs over the SSH protocol to provide device authentication and encryption.

- Enables secure, encrypted connections to Cisco or non-Cisco devices running an SSH server.
- Supports ciphers including DES, 3DES, and password authentication.
- Requires the SSH server to be enabled for client functionality.

SSH authentication methods

The SSH client supports the following user authentication methods:

- TACACS+
- RADIUS

- Local authentication and authorization



Note The SSH client functionality is available only when the SSH server is enabled.

SSH configuration guidelines

Follow these guidelines when configuring the device as an SSH server or SSH client:

- An RSA key pair generated by a SSHv1 server can be used by an SSHv2 server, and the reverse.
- If you get CLI error messages after entering the **crypto key generate rsa** global configuration command, an RSA key pair has not been generated. Reconfigure the hostname and domain, and then enter the **crypto key generate rsa** command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message *No hostname specified* might appear. If it does, you must configure an IP hostname by using the **hostname** global configuration command.
- When generating the RSA key pair, the message *No domain specified* might appear. If it does, you must configure an IP domain name by using the **ip domain-name** global configuration command.
- When configuring the local authentication and authorization authentication method, make sure that AAA is disabled on the console.

How to Configure Secure Shell

Set up the IR8140H to run SSH

To set up your device to run SSH, follow this procedure.



Note Configure user authentication for local or remote access. This step is required.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Note

Enter password if prompted.

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 3 Use the **hostname** *hostname* command to configure a hostname for your device.

Example:

```
Router(config)# hostname your_hostname
```

Note

You can follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

Step 4 Use the **ip domain-name** *domain_name* command to configure a host domain for your device.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip domain-name your_domain_name
```

Step 5 Use the **crypto key generate rsa** command to enable the SSH server for local and remote authentication on the device and generate an RSA key pair.

Example:

```
Router(config)# crypto key generate rsa
```

Note

You must follow this procedure only if you are configuring the device as an SSH server. Generating an RSA key pair for the device automatically enables SSH. A minimum modulus size of 1024 bits is recommended. When you generate RSA keys, you are prompted to enter a modulus length. A longer modulus length might be more secure, but it takes longer to generate and to use.

Step 6 Use the **end** command to exit to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# end
```

Step 7 Use the **show running-config** command to verify your entries.

Example:

```
Router# show running-config
```

Step 8 (Optional) Use the **copy running-config startup-config** command to save your entries in the configuration file.

Example:

```
Router# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configure the SSH server

Before you begin

Note This procedure is only required if you are configuring the device as an SSH server.

Follow these steps to configure the SSH server.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
IR8100# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **ip ssh version [2]** command to optionally configure the device to run SSH Version 2.

Example:

```
IR8100(config)# ip ssh version 2
```

Note

If you do not enter this command or do not specify a keyword, the SSH server selects the latest SSH version supported by the SSH client. For example, if the SSH client supports SSHv1 and SSHv2, the SSH server selects SSHv2.

Step 3 Use the **ip ssh { timeout seconds | authentication-retries number }** command to configure the SSH control parameters.

Example:

```
IR8100(config)# ip ssh timeout 90 ip ssh authentication-retries 2
```

Note

- Specify the time-out value in seconds; the default is 120 seconds. The range is 0 to 120 seconds. This parameter applies to the SSH negotiation phase. After the connection is established, the device uses the default time-out values of the CLI-based sessions.

By default, up to five simultaneous, encrypted SSH connections for multiple CLI-based sessions over the network are available (session 0 to session 4). After the execution shell starts, the CLI-based session time-out value returns to the default of 10 minutes.

- Specify the number of times that a client can re-authenticate to the server. The default is 3; the range is 0 to 5.
- Repeat this Step 4 when configuring both parameters.

Step 4 Use one or both commands:

- **line vty line_number [ending line number]**
- **transport input ssh**

Example:

```
IR8100(config)# line vty 1 10
```

or

```
IR8100(config-line)# transport input ssh
```

Note

Optionally you can configure the virtual terminal line settings.

- Enters line configuration mode to configure the virtual terminal line settings. For the *line_number* and *ending_line_number* arguments, the range is from 0 to 15.
- Specifies that the device prevents non-SSH Telnet connections, limiting the device to only SSH connections.

Step 5 Use the **end** command to exit line configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
IR8100(config-line)# end
```

SSH configuration and status commands

This topic provides information about commands for displaying the SSH server configuration and status.

Table 6: Commands for displaying the SSH server configuration and status

Command	Purpose
show ip ssh	Shows the version and configuration information for the SSH server.
show ssh	Shows the status of the SSH server.

Configure the router for local authentication and authorization

Before you begin



Note To secure the router for HTTP access by using AAA methods, you must configure the router with the `ip http authentication aaa` global configuration command. Configuring AAA authentication does not secure the router for HTTP access by using AAA methods.

You can configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the switch to implement AAA in local mode. The router then handles authentication and authorization. No accounting is available in this configuration.

Follow these steps to configure AAA to operate without a server by setting the router to implement AAA in local mode:

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
IR8100# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **aaa new-model** command to enable AAA.

Example:

```
IR8100(config)# aaa new-model
```

Step 3 Use the **aaa authentication login default local** command to set the login authentication to use the local username database.

Example:

```
IR8100(config)# aaa authentication login default local
```

Note

The default keyword applies the local user database authentication to all ports.

Step 4 Use the **aaa authorization exec local** command to configure user AAA authorization, check the local database, and allow the user to run an EXEC shell.

Example:

```
IR8100(config-line)# aaa authorization exec local
```

Step 5 Use the **aaa authorization network local** command to configure user AAA authorization for all network-related service requests.

Example:

```
IR8100(config-line)# aaa authorization network local
```

Step 6 Use the **username name privilege level password encryption-type password** command to enter the local database, and establishes a username-based authentication system.

Example:

```
IR8100(config-line)# username your_user_name privilege 1 password 7 secret567
```

Note

Repeat this command for each user.

- a. For *name*, specify the user ID as one word. Spaces and quotation marks are not allowed.
- b. (Optional) For *level*, specify the privilege level the user has after gaining access. The range is 0 to 15. Level 15 gives privileged EXEC mode access. Level 0 gives user EXEC mode access.
- c. For *encryption-type*, enter 0 to specify that an unencrypted password follows. Enter 7 to specify that a hidden password follows.
- d. For *password*, specify the password the user must enter to gain access to the switch. The password must be from 1 to 25 characters, can contain embedded spaces, and must be the last option specified in the username command.

Step 7 Use the **end** command to exit line configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
IR8100(config-line)# end
```

Secure copy

The Secure Copy Protocol (SCP) feature provides a secure and authenticated method for copying router configuration or router image files.

SCP relies on Secure Shell (SSH), an application and a protocol that provide a secure replacement for the Berkeley r-tools.

Prerequisites for secure copy

These are the prerequisites for configuring the device for secure shell (SSH):

- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the switch.
- Because SCP relies on SSH for its secure transport, the router must have an RSA key pair.
- SCP relies on SSH for security.
- SCP requires that authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) authorization be configured so the router can determine whether the user has the correct privilege level.
- A user must have appropriate authorization to use SCP.
- A user who has appropriate authorization can use SCP to copy any file in the Cisco IOS File System (IFS) to and from a switch by using the **copy** command. An authorized administrator can also do this from a workstation.

Restrictions for configuring secure copy

This section describes the restrictions for configuring the IR1800 for secure copy (SCP).

- Before enabling SCP, you must correctly configure SSH, authentication, and authorization on the router.
- When using SCP, you cannot enter the password into the **copy** command. You must enter the password when prompted.

Configure secure copy server

To configure the Cisco IR8100 for Secure Copy (SCP) server-side functionality, perform these steps.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

- Step 3** Use the **aaa new-model** command to set AAA authentication at login.

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa new-model
```

- Step 4** Use the **aaa authentication login { default | list-name } method1 [method2...]** command to enable the AAA access control system.

Example:

```
Router(config)# aaa authentication login default group tacacs+
```

- Step 5** Use the **username name [privilege level] password encryption-type encrypted-password** command to establish a username-based authentication system.

Example:

```
Router(config)# username superuser privilege 2 password 0 superpassword
```

Note

You may omit this step if a network-based authentication mechanism, such as TACACS+ or RADIUS, has been configured.

- Step 6** Use the **ip scp server enable** command to enable SCP server-side functionality.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip scp server enable
```

- Step 7** Use the **exit** command to exit global configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode

Example:

```
Router(config)# exit
```

- Step 8** Use the **show running-config** command to optionally display the SCP server-side functionality.

Example:

```
Router# show running-config
```

- Step 9** Use the **debug ip scp** command to optionally troubleshoot SCP authentication problems.

Example:

```
Router# debug ip scp
```

```
IR8100# copy scp <somefile> your_username@remotehost:/ <some/remote/directory>
```

Additional references

These sections provide references related to the SSH feature.

Table 7: References

Related Topic	Document Title
Configuring Identity Control policies and Identity Service templates for Session Aware networking.	Session Aware Networking Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Release 3SE: https://www.cisco.com/en/US/docs/ios-xml/ios/san/configuration/xe-3se/3850/san-xe-3se-3850-book.pdf
Configuring RADIUS, TACACS+, Secure Shell, 802.1X and AAA.	Secure Shell Configuration Guide, Cisco IOS XE Gibraltar 16.11.x: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/lan/catalyst9500/software/release/16-11/configuration_guide/sec/b_1611_sec_9500_cg/configuring_secure_shell_ssh_.html



CHAPTER 6

Software installation reference

This chapter contains the following sections:

- [Software installation reference, on page 55](#)

Software installation reference

This chapter contains the following sections:

Software installation requirements

Installing software on the router involves installing a consolidated package (bootable image) that consists of a bundle of subpackages, each controlling a different set of functions.

Upgrade software during a scheduled maintenance period when service interruption is acceptable. After upgrading the software, reboot the router to apply changes.

Cisco software licenses

Cisco software licensing is a system that enables activation and validation of Cisco IOS software feature sets through specific processes and components.

- Licenses can be used to enable consolidated packages, technology packages, or individual features.
- License files are stored in the bootflash of the router.
- The IR8100 uses Smart Licensing Using Policy (SLP) for license management.

Understanding Cisco software licensing

Cisco software licensing consists of processes and components to activate Cisco IOS software feature sets by obtaining and validating Cisco software licenses.

Consolidated packages

Consolidated packages are image-based licenses used to activate all subsystems on the IR8100 router that correspond to a specific license. These licenses are enforced only at boot time.

- Image-based licenses help bring up all subsystems related to the license.

- Licenses are enforced only during the router's boot process.
- Not all IOS-XE features may apply to the IR8100; some features may not be implemented or appropriate for this platform.

Available consolidated packages and feature applicability

To obtain software images for the IR8100 router, See [Cisco Software Download](#) page.

The following image-based licenses can be pre-installed on the IR8100 router:

- Network-Essentials
- Network-Advantage



Note All of the IOS-XE feature set may not apply to the IR8100. Some features may not have been implemented yet, or are not appropriate for this platform. Details of the Network-Essentials and Network-Advantage contents can be found in the IR8100 product data sheet.

Network-Essentials packages

The Network-Essentials and Network-Essentials_npe technology is a baseline networking feature.

- The **Network-Essentials** technology package includes baseline features and supports security features.
- The **Network-Essentials_npe** package includes all features of Network-Essentials except payload encryption functionality.
- The **Network-Essentials_npe** is available only in the Network-Essentials_npe image and helps fulfill export restriction requirements.

Differences between Network-Essentials and Network-Essentials_npe packages

The main difference between the Network-Essentials and Network-Essentials_npe packages is the presence or absence of payload encryption features such as IPsec and Secure VPN.

Network-Advantage packages

Network-Advantage is a Cisco technology that provides advanced network features.

- The **Network-Advantage** technology package includes all crypto features.
- The **Network-Advantage_npe** package (npe = No Payload Encryption) includes all features of **Network-Advantage** except payload-encryption functionality.
- The **Network-Advantage_npe** package is available only in the **Network-Advantage_npe** image to fulfill export restriction requirements.

Feature differences between Network-Advantage and Network-Advantage_npe

The main difference between the **Network-Advantage** and **Network-Advantage_npe** packages is the set of payload-encryption-enabling features such as IPsec and Secure VPN.

Related documentation

For further information on software licenses, see the Smart Licensing chapter.

Install Cisco IOS XE release

When the device boots up with the Cisco IOS XE image for the first time, it checks the installed version of the ROMmon and upgrades it if the system is running an older version. During the upgrade, do not power cycle the device. The system automatically power cycles the device after the new ROMmon is installed.

After the installation, the system boots up with the Cisco IOS XE image as normal.



Note When the device boots up for the first time and the device requires an upgrade, the entire boot process may take several minutes. This process is longer than a normal boot because of the ROMmon upgrade.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode and set the boot system, configuration register, and exit.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# boot sys
bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210221_233814_V17_5_0_172.SSA.bin
Router(config)# config-register 0x2102
Router(config)# exit
Router#
```

- Step 2** Use the **show romvar** command to verify the ROMmon variables and license configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show romvar
ROMMON variables:
PS1 = rommon ! >
THRPUT =
LICENSE_BOOT_LEVEL = network-advantage,all:IR8100;
RET_2_RTS =
CONSOLE_LOCK = 0
BOOT =
flash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210221_233814_V17_5_0_172.SSA.bin,12;
BSI = 0
RET_2_RCALTS =
RANDOM_NUM = 1294606670
```

- Step 3** Use the **show running-config | include license** command to display all lines in the running configuration that contain the word "license".

Example:

```
Router# show running-config | include license
no license feature hseck9
license udi pid IR8140H-P-K9 sn FDO2441J91D
license boot level network-advantage
Router#
```

Step 4 Use the **reload ?** command to display the available reload options.

Example:

```
Router# reload ?
/noverify Don't verify file signature before reload.
/verify   Verify file signature before reload.
at        Reload at a specific time/date
cancel    Cancel pending reload
in        Reload after a time interval
pause     Pause during reload
reason    Reload reason
<cr>     <cr>
```

Step 5 Use the **reload /verify** command to verify the image and reload the device.

Example:

```
Router# reload /verify
Verifying file integrity of
bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210221_233814_V17_5_0_172.SSA.bin.....
.....Computed
Hash SHA1 : AA480FF5DDA5077A9FF99CABCB176E37E7DBD4F6
Starting image verification
Hash Computation: 100%Done!
Computed Hash SHA2: f2aaa17b3aaa4bb6573e1947976e1086
9a835fb36a48fbc3a8653224af5dab7f
383387a559ee35242830697ceae4a6c0
5add53a956a0dce109df80cb03c9c8b9
Embedded Hash SHA2: f2aaa17b3aaa4bb6573e1947976e1086
9a835fb36a48fbc3a8653224af5dab7f
383387a559ee35242830697ceae4a6c0
5add53a956a0dce109df80cb03c9c8b9
Digital signature successfully verified in file
bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210221_233814_V17_5_0_172.SSA.bin
Signature Verified
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
*Jul  9 06:43:37.910: %SYS-5-RELOAD: Reload requested by console. Reload Reason: Reload
Command.
Jul  9 14:43:59.134: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION: R0/0: pvp: Process manager is exiting: process
exit with reload chassis code
watchdog watchdog0: watchdog did not stop!
reboot: Restarting system
Press RETURN to get started!
```

ROMMON image software packages

A ROMMON image is a software package used by ROM Monitor (ROMMON) software on a router. The software package is separate from the consolidated package normally used to boot the router.

- ROMMON images are independent software packages for the ROM Monitor.
- They are separate from the main consolidated package used to boot the router.
- ROMMON images can be upgraded independently of the main software package.

ROMMON Image Release and Upgrade Information

An independent ROMMON image (software package) may occasionally be released and the router can be upgraded with the new ROMMON software. For detailed instructions, see the documentation that accompanies the ROMMON image.



Note A new version of the ROMMON image is not necessarily released at the same time as a consolidated package for a router.

File systems

The table provides a list of file systems that can be seen on the Cisco IR8100 router.

Table 8: Router File Systems.1.a

File System	Description
bootflash:	Boot flash memory file system.
cns:	Cisco Networking Services file directory.
crashinfo:	Directory or Filename
flash:	Alias to the boot flash memory file system.
msata:	Directory or Filename
null:	Directory or Filename

Table 9: Router File Systems.1.b

File System	Description
nvrn:	Router NVRAM. You can copy the startup configuration to NVRAM or from NVRAM.
system:	System memory file system, which includes the running configuration.
tar:	Archive file system.
tmpsys:	Temporary system files file system.
webui:	Directory or Filename

Use the ? help option if you find a file system that is not listed in the provided tables.

Autogenerated file directories and files

This section discusses the autogenerated files and directories that can be created, and how the files in these directories can be managed.

Table 10: Autogenerated files

File or directory	Description
crashinfo files	Crashinfo files can appear in the bootflash: file system. These files provide descriptive information of a crash and may be useful for tuning or troubleshooting purposes. However, the files are not part of router operations, and can be erased without impacting the functioning of the router.
core directory	Storage area for .core files. If this directory is erased, it will automatically regenerate itself at bootup. The .core files in this directory can be erased without impacting any router functionality, but the directory itself should not be erased.
managed directory	This directory is created on bootup if a system check is performed. Its appearance is completely normal and does not indicate any issues with the router.
tracelogs directory	The storage area for trace files. Trace files are useful for troubleshooting. If the Cisco IOS process fails, for instance, users or troubleshooting personnel can access trace files using diagnostic mode to gather information related to the Cisco IOS failure. Trace files are not part of router operations; you can erase them without affecting the router's performance.

Key points about autogenerated directories

Important information about autogenerated directories include:

- Autogenerated files on the bootflash: directory should not be deleted, renamed, moved, or altered in any way unless directed by Cisco customer support.



Note Altering autogenerating files on the bootflash: may have unpredictable consequences for system performance.

- Crashinfo files and files in the core and tracelogs directory can be deleted.

Flash storage

Subpackages are installed to local media storage, such as flash.

For flash storage, use the **dir bootflash:** command to list the file names.



Note Flash storage is required for successful operation of a router.

Related documentation

This topic provides references to further information on software licenses and feature license installation.

For more information on software licenses, see the Smart Licensing Chapter.

For further information on obtaining and installing feature licenses, see [Configuring the Cisco IOS Software Activation Feature](#) .



CHAPTER 7

Software Maintenance Upgrade

The Software Maintenance Upgrade (SMU) is a feature used to deliver critical software fixes without requiring a full image upgrade.

- [Software Maintenance Upgrade package, on page 63](#)

Software Maintenance Upgrade package

The Software Maintenance Upgrade (SMU) is a package that can be installed on a system to provide a patch fix or security resolution to a released image for a specific defect in order to respond to immediate issues. It does not contain new features.

- SMUs are provided on a per release, per component basis and are specific to the platform. SMU versions are synchronized to the package major, minor, and maintenance versions they upgrade.
- SMUs are not an alternative to maintenance releases; all defects fixed by SMUs are automatically integrated into upcoming maintenance releases.
- The Cisco IOS XE platform internally validates SMU compatibility and does not allow installation of non-compatible SMUs, based on rules and limitations for a SMU change-set.
- An SMU allows you to address network issues quickly while reducing the time and scope of required testing compared to classic IOS software.
- SMU is a method to fix bugs in an existing release and allows the application of a PSIRT fix in an existing release.
- SMU is NOT an upgrade path from release X to release Y.

Hot Patching in SMU

The device only supports:

- The running image is modified in-place or in-service.
- This avoids downtime and interruption of service.
- The updated code to fix the defect is written in a different location, and the patch redirects the program run.

SMU workflow requirements

The workflow for the patch requires that you complete these sequence of operations in exec mode:

1. Addition of the SMU to the file system.
2. Activation of the SMU onto the system.
3. Committing the SMU change.
4. Removal and uninstallation of the SMU.

The basic requirements for SMU are:

- The image where the defect was discovered.
- The patch file that contains the fix for the defect must be formatted as `ir8100-image_name.release_version.CSCxyyyyy.SPA.smu.bin`.

Install a patch image

Before you begin



Note Use this task as an example of a patch created as a test. Your patch will have a name associated with a CDET to be installed as a fix.

Use these steps to install the patch image:

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **show power** command to verify the overall power consumption.

```
Router# show power
Main PSU :
Total Power Consumed: 11.37 Watts
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
Total power available : 30 WattsRouter#
```

Step 3 Use the **install add file bootflash:image-file** command to add the image.

```
Router# install add file
bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V 17_5_0_148.SSA.bin
CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
```

```

install_add: START Thu Aug  6 11:52:52 PDT 2020
cat: /tmp/patch/patch.sta: No such file or directory
install_add: Adding SMU
install_add: Checking whether new add is allowed ....
--- Starting SMU Add operation ---
Performing SMU_ADD on Active/Standby
[1] SMU_ADD package(s) on R0
[1] Finished SMU_ADD on R0
Checking status of SMU_ADD on [R0]
SMU_ADD: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Add operation
SUCCESS: install_add Thu Aug  6 11:53:31 PDT 2020
Router#

```

Step 4 Use the **install activate file bootflash:image-file** command to activate the patch image.

```

Router# install activate file
bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V 17_5_0_148.SSA.bin
CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin

install_activate: START Thu Aug  6 11:53:59 PDT 2020
System configuration has been modified.
Press Yes(y) to save the configuration and proceed.
Press No(n) for proceeding without saving the configuration.
Press Quit(q) to exit, you may save configuration and re-enter the command. [y/n/q]
y
Building configuration...
[OK]Modified configuration has been saved
install_activate: Activating SMU
Executing pre scripts....
Executing pre sripts done.
--- Starting SMU Activate operation ---
Performing SMU_ACTIVATE on Active/Standby
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: kgv_update [
/flash1/ir8100-universalk9.2020-08-06_10.38_shchang2.0.CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin, NOT slot
local is ics ] continuing ....
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: Signature validated for
/flash1/ir8100-universalk9.2020-08-06_10.38_shchang2.0.CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: TAM hash len:32
val:4407CBB447F0EEE3B12120D902F48FBA1C0D4900EED1FB614441198BE2302934
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: PCR8 before extend ctr:2
0817449B454BF036AF9D593D726D94D8942C50A9FFE93278FDA78EA62F2989F2
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: PCR8 after extend ctr:3
EF5F579FCDF989D044296F0584B99F719F2B6215895524B5E8AD55DF5671560
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: PCR extend successful
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: Chasfs updated for
name:bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V
17_5_0_148.SSA.bin CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
hash:975352C1562A492D582D09D5EB91230863F6CC18E6F900EB512AF27CC0C77E2C05F29596AD34AD7808C9E39EC23D4412F0D3AFA707BC906FE03D554A845E42D4
/usr/sbin/kgv_update: Update successful for
bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V 17_5_0_148.SSA.bin
CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
[1] SMU_ACTIVATE package(s) on R0
[1] Finished SMU_ACTIVATE on R0
Checking status of SMU_ACTIVATE on [R0]
SMU_ACTIVATE: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Activate operation
SUCCESS: install_activate flash1/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V
17_5_0_148.SSA.bin CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
Thu Aug  6 11:55:14 PDT 2020
Router#

```

Step 5 Use the **install commit** command to commit the installation.

```

Router# install commit
install_commit: START Thu Aug  6 11:55:29 PDT 2020
install_commit: Committing SMU
Executing pre scripts....
Executing pre scripts done.
--- Starting SMU Commit operation ---
Performing SMU_COMMIT on Active/Standby
[1] SMU_COMMIT package(s) on R0
[1] Finished SMU_COMMIT on R0
Checking status of SMU_COMMIT on [R0]
SMU_COMMIT: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Commit operation
SUCCESS: install_commit flash1/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V
17_5_0_148.SSA.bin CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin Thu Aug  6 11:56:08 PDT 2020
Router#

```

Step 6 Use the **show install summary** command to display the status summary of the installation.

```

Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
IMG   C    17.04.01.0.118999
SMU   C    bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V
17_5_0_148.SSA.bin CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
Router#

```

Step 7 Use the **show power** command to verify the result of the patch by showing the same command.

```

Router# show power
Main PSU :
Total Power Consumed: 11.04 Watts
Device HOT SMU works!
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
Total power available : 0 Watts
Router#

```

Uninstall patch image using rollback

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **show install summary** command to display the install summary.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type   St   Filename/Version
-----
IMG    C    17.04.01.0.118999
SMU    C    bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V
17_5_0_148.SSA.bin CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin
-----
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
Router#
```

Step 3 Use the **install ?** command to view all the available commands.

Example:

```
Router# install ?
abort                Abort the current install operation
activate             Activate an installed package
add                  Install a package file to the system
auto-abort-timer     Install auto-abort-timer
commit               Commit the changes to the loadpath
deactivate            Deactivate an install package
label                Add a label name to any installation point
prepare              Prepare package for operation
remove               Remove installed packages
rollback              Rollback to a previous installation point
Router# install rollback to ?
base                  Rollback to the base image
committed             Rollback to the last committed installation point
id                     Rollback to a specific install point id
label                 Rollback to a specific install point label
```

Step 4 Use the **install rollback to base** command to restore the image to its original version.

Example:

```
Router# install rollback to base
install_rollback: START Thu Aug  6 12:04:04 PDT 2020
install_rollback: Rolling back SMU
Executing pre scripts....
Executing pre scripts done.
--- Starting SMU Rollback operation ---
Performing SMU_ROLLBACK on Active/Standby
[1] SMU_ROLLBACK package(s) on R0
[1] Finished SMU_ROLLBACK on R0
Checking status of SMU_ROLLBACK on [R0]
SMU_ROLLBACK: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Rollback operation
CSCxx12345:SUCCESS
SUCCESS: install_rollback
/flash1/ir8100-universalk9.2020-08-06_10.38_shchang2.0.CSCxx12345.SSA.smu.bin Thu Aug  6
12:04:57 PDT 2020
Router#
```

Step 5 Use the **show install summary** command to display the installed patches.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
IMG   C    17.04.01.0.118999
-----
```

```
Auto abort timer: inactive
-----
Router#
```

Note

In the above command output, the patch has been removed and the device returns to the base image version prior to the upgrade.

Step 6 Use the **show power** command to verify the result of the patch.

Example:

```
Router# show power
Main PSU :
Total Power Consumed: 11.98 Watts
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
Total power available : 30 Watts
Router#
```

Uninstall the patch image using deactivate, commit, and remove commands



Note In this task there are two patches installed on the devices: CSCvq11111 and CSCvt22222. but only CSCvt22222 will be removed.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **show install summary** command to display the installation and patch details.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
```

```
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
```



```
SMU   C    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt11111.SPA.smu.bin
SMU   C    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
IMG   C    17.04.1
```

Step 2 Use the **install deactivate file bootflash: patch-file** command to deactivate the patch.

```
Router# install deactivate file bootflash:/ir8100-universalk9.release.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
install_deactivate: START Fri Apr 24 22:54:10 UTC 2020
install_deactivate: Deactivating SMU
Executing pre scripts....
Executing pre scripts done.
--- Starting SMU Deactivate operation ---
Performing SMU_DEACTIVATE on Active/Standby
[R0] SMU_DEACTIVATE package(s) on R0
[R0] Finished SMU_DEACTIVATE on R0
Checking status of SMU_DEACTIVATE on [R0]
SMU_DEACTIVATE: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Deactivate operation
SUCCESS: install_deactivate /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin Fri
Apr 24 22:54:49 UTC 2020
```

Step 3 Use the **show install summary** command to display the installed patches.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
SMU   C    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt11111.SPA.smu.bin
SMU   D    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
IMG   C    17.01.1
```

Step 4 Use the **install commit** command to save.

```
Router# install commit
install_commit: START Fri Apr 24 22:56:11 UTC 2020
install_commit: Committing SMU

*Apr 24 22:56:15.169: %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_START_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Started install
commitExecuting pre scripts....
Executing pre scripts done.
--- Starting SMU Commit operation ---
Performing SMU_COMMIT on Active/Standby
[R0] SMU_COMMIT package(s) on R0
[R0] Finished SMU_COMMIT on R0
Checking status of SMU_COMMIT on [R0]
SMU_COMMIT: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Commit operation

SUCCESS: install_commit /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin Fri Apr
24 22:56:32 UTC 2020

*Apr 24 22:56:33.342: %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_COMPLETED_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Completed
install commit SMU
```

Step 5 Use the **show install summary** command to display the installed patches.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
           C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
SMU   C    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt11111.SPA.smu.bin
SMU   I    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
IMG   C    <release>
```

Step 6 Use the **install remove file flash: patch-file** command to remove the patch.

Example:

```
Router# install remove file flash:ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
install_remove: START Fri Apr 24 22:57:17 UTC 2020

*Apr 24 22:57:20.775: %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_START_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Started install
remove flash:ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bininstall_remove: Removing
SMU
Executing pre scripts....
Executing pre scripts done.

--- Starting SMU Remove operation ---
Performing SMU_REMOVE on Active/Standby
[R0] SMU_REMOVE package(s) on R0
[R0] Finished SMU_REMOVE on R0
Checking status of SMU_REMOVE on [R0]
SMU_REMOVE: Passed on [R0]
Finished SMU Remove operation

SUCCESS: install_remove /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin Fri Apr
24 22:57:34 UTC 2020

*Apr 24 22:57:34.902: %INSTALL-5-INSTALL_COMPLETED_INFO: R0/0: install_engine: Completed
install remove flash:ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
```

Show what patches are installed:

Step 7 Use the **show install summary** command to display the installed patches.

Example:

```
Router# show install summary
[ R0 ] Installed Package(s) Information:
State (St): I - Inactive, U - Activated & Uncommitted,
           C - Activated & Committed, D - Deactivated & Uncommitted
-----
Type  St   Filename/Version
-----
SMU   C    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt11111.SPA.smu.bin
SMU   I    /flash1/ir8100-universalk9.<release>.CSCvt22222.SPA.smu.bin
IMG   C    <release>
```



CHAPTER 8

Smart Licensing Using Policy (SLP)

This document outlines the core concepts and operational requirements for implementing Smart Licensing Using Policy.

- [Smart licensing using policy on Cisco routers, on page 71](#)

Smart licensing using policy on Cisco routers

The Smart Licensing Using Policy chapter has been replaced by a standalone guide called [Smart Licensing Using Policy on the Cisco Catalyst IR1101, IR1800, IR8140, IR8340 and ESR6300 Routers](#).



CHAPTER 9

Battery Backup Unit (BBU)

This reference provides technical specifications and functional details for the Battery Backup Unit (BBU).

- [Battery Backup Units, on page 73](#)
- [BBU mode configurations, on page 73](#)
- [Upgrade the BBU, on page 77](#)

Battery Backup Units

The integrated modular battery backup unit (BBU) is a smart charging and monitoring system for the IR8100 router.

- Supplies power to the router when AC power is turned off.
- Allows graceful shutdown of router events based on configured voltage level thresholds.
- Supports up to three BBU units installed on the system.

Battery Backup Unit reference information

The BBU Product ID (PID) for the IR8100 is CGR-BATT-4AH.

BBU mode configurations

The BBU (Battery Backup Unit) mode determines whether the router uses battery power when AC power is unavailable. Disabling or enabling the BBU affects battery life and system operation.

- Disabling the BBU preserves battery life during storage, shipping, or transportation.
- Disabling the BBU allows safe battery replacement in an operating router.

BBU mode configuration details

The BBU automatically supplies power to the router when AC power is not available. You can enable or disable the BBU as needed.



Note When the BBU is disabled by the `request platform hardware battery disable` command, the router will shut down if not powered by AC power. The BBU can still be charged when disabled.

Enable BBU

To enable the BBU in the router, follow these steps.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **request platform hardware battery enable** command to enable the battery.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery enable
```

Step 3 Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Proceed with enabling battery?[confirm]
Battery enabled.
Router# Aug 16 22:26:01.473: %BBU-5-CLI_OK: R0/0: bbu: Command Battery enabled
```

Step 4 Use the **show platform hardware battery unit** command to check the BBU status.

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery unit
Battery pack state: Operational
Battery unit          0          1          2
-----+-----+-----+-----+
Status ..... Idle      Idle      Full
Battery Mode ..... enabled enabled enabled
Charge level ..... 90%    91%    96%
Capacity Remaining (mAh) 5235    5225    5545
Full Charge Capacity (mAh) 5739    5739    5739
Voltage ..... (mV) 11736    11714    11869
Current ..... (mA) 0        0        0
Temperature ..... ('C) 30      31      31
Firmware version ..... 1224    1224    1224
```

Disable BBU

To disable the BBU in the router, follow these steps.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **request platform hardware battery disable** command to disable the BBU.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery disable
```

Step 3 Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Router will shut down if not powered by AC Power. Proceed with disabling battery?[confirm]
Battery disabled.
Router# Aug 16 22:26:16.647: %BBU-5-CLI_OK: R0/0: bbu: Command Battery disabled
```

Step 4 Use the **show platform hardware battery unit** command to check the BBU status.

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery unit
Battery pack state: Operational
Battery unit          0          1          2
-----+-----+-----+-----
Status ..... Idle      Idle      Full
Battery Mode ..... disabled disabled disabled
Charge level ..... 91%    91%    96%
Capacity Remaining (mAh) 5236    5219    5534
Full Charge Capacity (mAh) 5739    5739    5739
Voltage ..... (mV) 11732    11714    11869
Current ..... (mA) 0        0        0
Temperature ..... ('C) 30      31      31
Firmware version ..... 1224    1224    1224
```

Reset BBU

To reset the BBU in the router:

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **request platform hardware battery reset enable** command to disconnect the communications with the battery.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery reset enable
```

Step 3 Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Proceed with enabling reset?[confirm]
Battery reset enabled.
```

Step 4 Use the **request platform hardware battery reset enable** command to verify the BBU status.

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery unit
Battery is not ready
Battery pack state: Not available
```

Step 5 Use the **request platform hardware battery reset disable** command to reconnect communications with the battery.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery reset disable
```

Step 6 Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Proceed with disabling reset?[confirm]
Battery reset disabled.
```

Step 7 Use the **show platform hardware battery unit** command to verify the BBU status.

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery unit
Battery pack state: Operational
Battery unit          0          1
-----+-----+-----
Status ..... Full      Full
Battery Mode ..... enabled enabled
Charge level ..... 87%   100%
Capacity Remaining (mAh) 5907 6875
Full Charge Capacity (mAh) 6821 6944
Voltage ..... (mV) 11996 12244
Current ..... (mA) 0      0
Temperature ..... ('C) 30   31
Firmware version ..... 6273 6273
```

Enable or disable transportation mode on the router

When the router has the BBU transportation mode set, inhibit discharge is enabled when AC is ON and inhibit discharge is disabled when AC is OFF. So, effectively the battery can be charged, but does not discharge. Transportation mode setting is persistent on system reload.

To enable the BBU to transportation mode in the router:

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

- Step 2** Use the **request platform hardware battery transportation-mode enable** command to enable the transportation-mode.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery transportation-mode enable
```

- Step 3** Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Proceed with enabling transportation-mode?[confirm]
Battery transportation-mode enabled.
```

- Step 4** Use the **show platform hardware battery unit** command to verify the BBU status.

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery unit
Battery pack state: Operational (Transportation mode)
Battery unit          0          1
-----+-----+-----
Status ..... Full      Full
Battery Mode ..... enabled enabled
Charge level ..... 87%   100%
Capacity Remaining (mAh) 5907 6875
Full Charge Capacity (mAh) 6821 6944
Voltage ..... (mV) 11994 12245
Current ..... (mA) 0      0
Temperature ..... ('C) 30   31
Firmware version ..... 6273 6273
```

- Step 5** Use the **request platform hardware battery transportation-mode disable** command to disable the transportation mode.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery transportation-mode disable
```

- Step 6** Confirm the action when prompted.

Example:

```
Proceed with disabling transportation-mode?[confirm]
Battery transportation mode disabled.
```

Upgrade the BBU

It is recommended that you keep the software up to date to ensure that the router works with the latest features and bug fixes.

To upgrade the BBU in the router:

Before you begin

Ensure your device is running IOS-XE 17.9.1 or later before proceeding with the upgrade.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

- Step 2** Use the **bbu_fw** command to create a new directory.

Example:

```
Router# mkdir bootflash:/bbu_fw
Create directory filename [bbu_fw]?
Created dir bootflash:/bbu_fw
```

- Step 3** Copy the firmware file (**BMZ_06273.bin.SPA**) to the **bbu_fw** directory using SCP or another file transfer method.

Example:

```
Router# dir bootflash:/bbu_fw
Directory of bootflash:/bbu_fw/
259127  -rw-                27624   Oct 7 2024 20:23:23 +00:00  BMZ_06273.bin.SPA7228108800
bytes total (5388279808 bytes free)
```

Note

An image stored in a local file will be used to upgrade the BBU firmware through the cli. Prior to installation, the firmware image will be signed and verified. BBU firmware images and IR1840 images will be posted to Cisco.com. For more information, contact [Cisco Support](#).

- Step 4** Use the **show platform hardware battery short** command to verify AC power supply is on and the firmware version is the old version (**8302**).

Example:

```
Router# show platform hardware battery short
AC power supply ..... ON
Battery present ..... YES
Battery ready ..... YES
Transportation mode ..... NO
Number of battery units . 1
Time to empty ..... 3:15
Unit#  Charge  Time to empty  State           Firmware  Battery Mode
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
0      37%           3:15           Idle
```

8302

enabled

- Step 5** Use the **request platform hardware battery firmware-update install** command to upgrade the firmware.

Example:

```
Router# request platform hardware battery firmware-update install
bootflash:/bbu_fw/BMZ_06273.bin.SPA
Proceed with bbu firmware upgrade?[confirm]
Battery firmware upgrade starting
```

Example:

```
Oct 7 20:35:47.039: %BBU-5-CLI_OK: R0/0: bbu: Command Battery firmware upgrade starting
Oct 7 20:35:47.477: %BBU-7-FSM_TRANSITION: R0/0: bbu: FSM transition (3, 2) -> 2
Oct 7 20:35:48.478: %BBU-4-FW_UPGRADE_STARTED: R0/0: bbu: Firmware upgrade to version 6273
started
Oct 7 20:35:59.637: %BBU-3-COMM_ERR: R0/0: bbu: Battery communication error: select timed
out
Oct 7 20:36:07.598: %BBU-5-FW_UPGRADE_FINISHED: R0/0: bbu: Firmware upgrade finished
successfullyOct 7 20:36:07.599: %BBU-7-FSM_TRANSITION: R0/0: bbu: FSM transition (2, 2)
-> 0
Oct 7 20:36:14.807: %BBU-5-BBU_EVT_LOG: R0/0: bbu: Battery Event Log - BBU Event Data is
written to log file:success
Oct 7 20:36:14.811: %BBU-7-FSM_TRANSITION: R0/0: bbu: FSM transition (0, 2) -> 3
```

Note

Do not interrupt the process until it is complete.

Step 6 Use the **show platform hardware battery short** command to verify that the firmware upgrade is successful.

```
Router# show platform hardware battery short
AC power supply ..... ON
Battery present ..... YES
Battery ready ..... YES
Transportation mode ..... NO
Number of battery units . 1
Time to empty ..... 2:39
Unit# Charge Time to empty State Firmware Battery Mode
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----
0 37% 2:39 Charging
6273
enabled
```




CHAPTER 10

Tamper detection

This reference provides information regarding the tamper detection capabilities and security monitoring functions of the hardware.

- [Tamper detection scenarios, on page 81](#)

Tamper detection scenarios

Cisco Catalyst IR8140H routers use IR sensors and switches to detect tampering events such as module or cover removal in Unified Inventory Management (UIM) slots and the BBU unit.

- IR sensors in UIM slots detect the presence or absence of slot covers or modules.
- A switch on the BBU board monitors BBU removal in progress.
- Alarms and events are generated when tampering is detected and sent to Cisco IOT-FND.

Tamper detection mechanisms and scenarios

Cisco Catalyst IR8140H routers provide IR sensors for cover detection in the UIM slots, and a switch on the BBU board for the BBU unit. For each UIM slot, IR8140H routers have an IR Time of Flight sensor to detect the distance to the slot cover when there is no UIM installed in the slot. If no cover is detected, an alarm syslog message is generated. If the router is registered to Cisco IOT-FND, a corresponding event is also sent to Cisco IOT-FND.

The cover detection applies for these scenarios:

- Any UIM module is removed during operation.
- The cover for an unused UIM slot is removed.
- BBU removal detected in progress (through a switch on the BBU board).

In cases where the Supervisor (CPU) module is removed or the BBU is removed (if its alarm could not be sent when the BBU removal in progress was detected), a tamper indication is stored in the flash of the secondary MCU, which allows IR8140H routers to send an alarm to Cisco IOT-FND at a later time.



Note The ability to send the alarm to Cisco IOT-FND depends on the WAN interface (Ethernet or LTE connectivity) being available at the time of the occurrence of the tamper detection.



Note It is recommended to power down the module prior to physically removing it, using these CLI commands:

```
IR8140H(config)# hw-module subslot 0/3 shutdown unpowered
```

After inserting the replacement module, power it up using this command:

```
IR8140H(config)# no hw-module subslot 0/3 shutdown unpowered
```



CHAPTER 11

Power Over Ethernet (PoE)

Provides information on the functionality and implementation of Power Over Ethernet to support network device connectivity.

- [Power over Ethernet, on page 83](#)
- [Device detection and power allocations, on page 83](#)
- [Power budget calculation for router connected modules, on page 84](#)
- [Key considerations, on page 84](#)
- [Configure PoE using CLI, on page 85](#)
- [Verify PoE configuration, on page 85](#)
- [Debugging commands for PoE, on page 87](#)

Power over Ethernet

Power over Ethernet (PoE) is a network technology which allows transmission of both power and data over a single Ethernet cable. It is typically used to power up devices such as Access Points, IP Cameras and IP Phones connected to the device's Ethernet port Gi0/0/0 as per IEEE 802.3AF and AT standards.

The total PoE available power budget is fixed as 15.4 W which is used entirely by Gi0/0/0 interface. When PoE is enabled, the router detects the connected devices and allocates power based on the device types.

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Release 26.1.1, Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Routers can provide up to 30 W of power per port to connected devices over Ethernet.

Table 11: Feature History Table

Feature name	Release information	Feature description
Power over Ethernet Plus Support	Release 26.1.1	Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Routers can provide up to 30 W of power per port to connected devices over Ethernet.

Device detection and power allocations

After the device detection:

- The router detects a Cisco pre-standard or an IEEE-compliant power device when the PoE is enabled and the connected device is not being powered by an AC adapter.
- The router determines the power requirement based on the power classification class of the connected device.
- The router checks the available power budget to decide if it can power the port or not.
- The router initially allocates a class max power when it detects a device and then powers it on.
- Further power negotiation happens using the Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) / Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) protocols.



Note During reloading the device, the PoE ports remain powered down until the unit reboots.

Power budget calculation for router connected modules

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Release 26.1.1, the IR8140H-P-K9 router calculates the power budget during system boot. The IR8140H-P-K9 supports 60 W of power supply.

To calculate power budget allocation for PoE:

Table 12: Power budget calculation

Module	Consumed Power
System reservation	15 W
SPA module (WPAN, LTE, etc.)	5 W
mSATA module	2.5 W
BBU	24 W

Key considerations

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Release 26.1.1 consider these points:

- You must avoid online insertion and removal of modules (OIR), on the router to avoid power unavailability issues and undefined behavior of the devices.
- The power budget is calculated only once during system boot-up, based on the connected modules at a given time.
- If you power down or power up a module after system boot, the power budget allocation does not change because it is fixed at boot time.

- To manage power reliably and prevent any shortages, ensure that modules are installed or removed only before booting the system.
- Replacing a module with another module of the same type after system boot, does not affect the power budget allocation because the system retains the original allocation.

Configure PoE using CLI

Follow this procedure to configure PoE or PoE+ for connected modules of IR8140H-P-K9 router.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the config mode.

Example:

```
Router#configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **interface** [*interface-id*] command to enter the interface id.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)#interface g0/0/0
```

Step 3 Use the **power inline {auto|never}** command to enable PoE.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)#power inline {auto|never}
```

What to do next

Verify the configuration.

Verify PoE configuration

Follow this procedure to verify PoE or PoE+ configuration for connected modules of R8140H-P-K9 router.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **show power inline** command to verify PoE or PoE+ configuration for connected modules of router.

Example:

```
Router#show power inline
Available:15.4(w) Used:6.4(w) Remaining:9.0(w)

Interface Admin Oper      Power   Device      Class Max
              (Watts)
```

```
-----
Gi0/0/0   auto   on           6.4   IP Phone 8845   2   15.4
```

Example:

```
Router#show power inline
Available:31.0(w)   Used:30.0(w)   Remaining:1.0(w)
```

```
Interface Admin  Oper           Power   Device           Class Max
              (Watts)
-----
Gi0/0/0   auto   on           30.0   WS-C3560CX-8PT-S   4   30.0
-----
Totals:           1   on   30.0
```

Step 2 Use the **show power inline** [*interface-id*] command to display power of a particular interface.

Example:

```
Router#show power inline Gi0/0/0
```

Step 3 Use the **show power inline** [*interface-id*] **detail** command to display PoE status for a router for the specified interface.

Example:

```
Router#show power inline Gi0/0/0 detail
```

Step 4 Use the **show power** command to display power consumption.

Example:

```
Router#show power
Main PSU :
  Total Power Consumed: 24.19 Watts
  Configured Mode : N/A
  Current runtime state same : N/A
  PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
  Configured Mode : N/A
  Current runtime state same : N/A
  Total power available : 15.4 Watts
```

Example:

```
Router#show power
Main PSU :
  Total Power Consumed: 34.76 Watts
  Configured Mode : N/A
  Current runtime state same : N/A
  PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
  Configured Mode : N/A
  Current runtime state same : N/A
  Total power available : 31.0 Watts
```

Debugging commands for PoE

The list of commands for debugging PoE are given in the table:

Command	Description
Debug ilpower controller	Display PoE controller debug messages
Debug ilpower event	Display PoE event debug messages
Debug ilpower port	Display PoE port manager debug messages
Debug ilpower powerman	Display PoE power management debug messages
Debug ilpower cdp	Display PoE CDP debug messages
Debug ilpower registries	Display PoE registries debug messages
Debug ilpower scp	Display PoE scp debug messages



CHAPTER 12

12V DC output for third party device

This reference provides the technical requirements and output capabilities for the 12V DC power interface.

- [12V DC outputs, on page 89](#)

12V DC outputs

The 12V DC output for 3rd party devices provides 1 Amp of power at 12V with current limiting at 1.5A and fuse protection at 5A. Output is 12V +/- 10%.

To enable 12v-output, enter the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Router(config)# platform 12v-output enable
```

To disable 12v-output, enter the following command in global configuration mode:

```
Router(config)# no platform 12v-output enable
```



Note PoE and 12V configuration are mutually exclusive.



CHAPTER 13

NTP timing based on GPS clock

This reference details the configuration and operational requirements for integrating a GPS clock source with NTP to maintain accurate system time.

- [Configure NTP using GPS time, on page 91](#)

Configure NTP using GPS time

You can configure the GPS time as the reference clock for NTP using the command **ntp refclock gps**.

The GPS time acts as a stratum 0 source, and the Cisco IOS NTP server acts as a stratum 1 device, which in turn provides clock information to its NTP clients (stratum 2 and 3).

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

- Step 2** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

- Step 3** Use the **ntp refclock gps** command to configure the NTP reference clock as GPS:

Example:

```
Router(config)# ntp refclock gps
```

- Step 4** Use the **ntp refclock gps** command to verify the configuration.

Example:

```
Router#  
Sep 24 19:58:43.046 GMT: %PKI-6-AUTHORITATIVE_CLOCK: The system clock has been set.  
Router# show ntp status  
Clock is synchronized, stratum 1, reference is .GPS.  
nominal freq is 250.0000 Hz, actual freq is 249.9970 Hz, precision is 2**10  
ntp uptime is 94000 (1/100 of seconds), resolution is 4016  
reference time is E31778F3.0B851ED8 (19:58:43.045 GMT Thu Sep 24 2020)
```

```

clock offset is 11.0000 msec, root delay is 0.00 msec
root dispersion is 3950.55 msec, peer dispersion is 3938.47 msec
loopfilter state is 'CTRL' (Normal Controlled Loop), drift is 0.000011995 s/s
system poll interval is 64, last update was 7 sec ago.
Router#
Router#
Router#
show ntp associations
address ref clock st when poll reach delay offset disp
*~127.127.5.1 .GPS. 0 38 64 7 0.000 11.000 1938.8
* sys.peer, # selected, + candidate, - outlyer, x falseticker, ~ configured
Router# show clock
20:00:43.660 GMT Thu Sep 24 2020

```

Step 5 Use the **debug ntp refclock** command to troubleshoot the configuration.

Example:

```

Router# debug ntp ?
adjust NTP clock adjustments
all NTP all debugging on
core NTP core messages
events NTP events
packet NTP packet debugging
refclock NTP refclock messages
Router# debug ntp re
Router#debug ntp refclock
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: GPS: Poll Requested
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: GPS (19:58:43.056 GMT Thu Sep 24 2020)
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: Valid time rcvd from GPS: 2020/09/24 19:58:43.056 (frac =
0x0E560440)
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: RTS poll timestamp (local clock) was 0xE31778F3.0B851ED8
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: GPS timestamp is 0xE31778F3.0E560440
*Sep 24 19:58:43.045 GMT: NTP Core(NOTICE): ntpd PPM
*Sep 24 19:58:43.046 GMT: NTP Core(NOTICE): trans state : 5
*Sep 24 19:58:43.046 GMT: NTP Core(NOTICE): Clock is synchronized.

```



CHAPTER 14

vCPU and RAM distribution

This reference provides the configuration details for vCPU and RAM distribution across the infrastructure.

- [Introduction, on page 93](#)
- [Distribution of vCPU and RAM resources for Cisco IOx applications, on page 93](#)
- [Higher CPU and RAM allocation for IOx applications, on page 94](#)
- [Configure data plane heavy template, on page 94](#)
- [Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution, on page 95](#)
- [Configure the Service Plane Heavy Template, on page 96](#)
- [Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution, on page 96](#)

Introduction

The vCPU resource allocation is a configuration process that manages how physical processor cores and memory are assigned to Cisco IOx applications.

- vCPU is also known as physical processor.

Distribution of vCPU and RAM resources for Cisco IOx applications

Distribution of vCPU and RAM resources for Cisco IOx applications refers to the allocation of processing and memory resources to optimize application performance on Cisco Catalyst IR8100 router.

- Resource distribution enables running multiple IOx applications simultaneously.
- Templates are available for Data Plane Heavy and Service Plane Heavy configurations.
- vCPU is also known as physical processor.

Templates for vCPU and RAM distribution

Two main templates are used to distribute vCPU and RAM resources for IOx applications on the Catalyst IR8100 router:

- **Data Plane Heavy** —Refers to a router configuration where most of the system resources are dedicated to the data plane, which is responsible for processing and forwarding network packets. This template maximizes throughput and ensures high-speed packet transfer, providing more processing power and memory to handle increased data plane load. The Data Plane Heavy template is the default for vCPU and RAM distribution in the IR8100 router.
- **Service Plane Heavy** —Refers to a router configuration where most of the system resources are allocated to the service plane, which provides network services such as Quality of Service (QoS), security functions, and load balancing. This template allocates additional vCPU and RAM to IOx applications but reduces data throughput (bandwidth).



Note Routers with 2 GB RAM and a single core vCPU (IOx resources) cannot run multiple IOx applications such as Unified Threat Defense and Cisco Cyber Vision.

Higher CPU and RAM allocation for IOx applications

The IR8100 router with 8 GB RAM, starting from Cisco IOS XE Release 17.15.1, supports Data Plane Heavy and Service Plane Heavy distribution templates for hosting Cisco IOx applications.

- Allows allocation of 3 GB RAM and two vCPU cores to the IR8100 router for IOx applications.
- Supports Data Plane Heavy and Service Plane Heavy distribution templates.
- Service Plane Heavy template is recommended for hosting IOx applications.

Configure data plane heavy template

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the global configuration mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# configure terminal
```
- Step 2** Use the **platform resource data-plane-heavy** command to enable the data plane heavy template:
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# platform resource data-plane-heavy
```
- Step 3** Use the **reload** command to reboot the router and activate the data plane heavy template.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# reload
```
-

**What to do next**

Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution.

## Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution

Follow these steps to verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution for IOx applications.

**Procedure**

- Step 1** Use the **show platform software cpu allocation** command to verify the vCPU core allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router# show platform software cpu allocation
CPU alloc information:
Control plane cpu alloc: 0-1
Data plane cpu alloc: 2-3
Service plane cpu alloc: 0-1
Slow control plane cpu alloc:
Template used: CLI-data_plane_heavy
```

- Step 2** Use the **show app-host resource** command to verify the RAM allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router# show app-host resource
Resource Allocation:
CPU Quota: 33%
Memory Quota: 2048MB
Storage Total: 6350MBStorage Available: 1404MB
```

- Step 3** Use the **show app-host infra** command to verify the CPU units resource allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router# show app-host infraIOX version: 2.11.0.3
App signature verification: disabled
CAF Health: Stable
Internal working directory: /vol/harddisk/iox
CPU:
Quota: 33%
Available: 33%
Quota: 1617(Units)
Available: 1617(Units)
```

# Configure the Service Plane Heavy Template

## Procedure

**Step 1** Use the **platform resource service-plane-heavy** command to enable the service plane heavy template.

**Example:**

```
Router(config)# platform resource service-plane-heavy
```

**Step 2** Use the **reload** command to reboot the router and activate the service plane heavy template.

**Example:**

```
Router# reload
```

## What to do next

Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution.

# Verify the active vCPU and RAM distribution

Use this procedure to confirm the allocation of vCPU cores, RAM, and CPU units for IOx applications on your router after applying the service plane heavy template.

## Procedure

**Step 1** Use the **show platform software cpu allocation** command to verify the vCPU cores allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router#show platform software cpu allocation
CPU Allocation Information:Control plane cpu alloc: 0-1
Data plane cpu alloc: 3
Service plane cpu alloc:
0-2
Template used:
CLI-service_plane_heavy
```

**Step 2** Use the **show app-host resource** command to verify the RAM allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router#show app-host resource
Resource Allocation:
CPU Quota: 38%
Memory Quota:3072MB
Storage Total: 6350MB
Storage Available: 1403MB
```

**Step 3** Use the **show app-host infra** command to verify the CPU units resource allocation for IOx applications.

**Example:**

```
Router#show app-host infra
IOX version: 2.11.0.3
App signature verification: disabled
CAF Health: Stable
Internal working directory: /vol/harddisk/iox
CPU:
Quota: 38%
Available: 38%
Quota: 1862 (Units)
Available: 1862 (Units)
```

---





## CHAPTER 15

# Cellular pluggable interface modules

The Cisco 4G LTE-Advanced Configuration chapter has been replaced by a new standalone guide called [Cellular Pluggable Interface Module Configuration Guide](#) . This guide contains updated information on all aspects of using the Cisco Cellular PIM.



**Important** The Pluggable Module is not hot swappable. The router must be reloaded after a new module is installed.

- [Support for P-5GS6-R16SA-GL pluggable module, on page 99](#)
- [Galileo support on the LTE pluggable modules, on page 99](#)
- [Radio signal parameters and GPS coordinates of cellular telemetry monitoring using syslog messages, on page 101](#)
- [GPS NMEA unique identifier , on page 102](#)
- [Configure cellular modem GPS NMEA unique identifier, on page 104](#)

## Support for P-5GS6-R16SA-GL pluggable module

From Cisco IOS-XE Release 17.18.2, the P-5GS6-R16SA-GL Pluggable Module is supported on ESR6300 routers.

Support for the P-5GS6-R16SA-GL Pluggable Module works the same way on the ESR6300 routers as it does on the other IoT routers. For details, see [5G Sub-6 GHz Pluggable Interface Module](#) and [Cellular Pluggable Interface Module Configuration Guide](#) .

## Galileo support on the LTE pluggable modules

The Cisco IOS XE 17.11.1a release introduces support for the Galileo constellation on LTE pluggable modules.

GPS was the only GNSS constellation supported in earlier releases. The Cisco IOS XE 17.11.1a release introduces support for Galileo constellation.



**Note** You can enable only one constellation at a time.

Configuration command examples:

```
config# controller cellular<slot/port>
(config-controller)# <no> lte gps constellation <gps | galileo | gnss >
```

Example:

```
(config-controller)# lte gps constellation ?
galileo select Galileo as active constellation
gps select GPS as active constellation
gnss select multiple GNSS as active constellation
```




---

**Note** The default setting is GPS mode.

---

The galileo and gnss options in this CLI configure Galileo and simultaneous GNSS modes, such as GPS and Galileo.

If you disable the GPS configuration, make sure that no constellation is configured. This maintains consistency with GPS mode configuration.

Example:

```
config#
```

```
controller Cellular 0/2/0
```

```
(config-controller)# no lte gps constellation gps
```

Show commands example:




---

**Note** The example shows the current GNSS constellation as Galileo.

---

Example:

```
config#
```

```
show cellular 0/2/0 gps detail
```

```
GPS Feature = enabled
GPS Mode Configured = standalone
Current Constellation Configured = galileo
GPS Port Selected = Dedicated GPS port
GPS Status = GPS acquiring
```

Any changes made to the configuration will require the router to be rebooted.

More information is available in the [Cellular Pluggable Interface Module Configuration Guide](#).



# Radio signal parameters and GPS coordinates of cellular telemetry monitoring using syslog messages

Cellular telemetry is a feature that enables real-time monitoring and analysis of cellular connection performance by collecting Radio Frequency (RF) parameters and Global Positioning System (GPS) coordinates from the cellular network at a fixed interval of 60 seconds.

- Monitors key radio signal parameters such as RSSI, RSRP, RSRQ, PCI, and SNR.
- Collects GPS coordinates for location tracking.
- Facilitates troubleshooting, network optimization, and ensures reliable connectivity.

## Cellular Telemetry Reference Information

Cellular telemetry parameters that can be monitored include:

- Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI)
- Reference Signal Received Power (RSRP)
- Reference Signal Received Quality (RSRQ)
- Physical Cell Identity (PCI)
- Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR)
- Global Positioning System (GPS) coordinates

The Cisco Catalyst WAN Manager does not support cellular telemetry.

## Enable cellular telemetry

To enable the cellular telemetry feature in the controller cellular interface 0/x/0 using the CLI.

### Before you begin

- Insert the cellular Pluggable Interface Module (PIM) into the IR device.
- Enable GPS in the controller for GPS coordinates to be displayed in syslogs.

### Procedure

---

**Step 1** Enter the global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router#configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Enter the cellular configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router (config)#controller cellular 0/2/0
```

**Step 3** Enable the RF parameters and GPS coordinates.

**Example:**

```
Router (config-controller)#lte modem serviceability signal-parameters
Router (config-controller)#end
```

## Disable cellular telemetry

To disable the cellular telemetry feature, use the no form of the **lte modem serviceability signal-parameters** command, as shown in the example:

```
Router#Configure terminal
Router (config)#controller cellular 0/2/0
```

```
Router (config-controller)#no lte modem serviceability signal-parameters
Router (config-controller)#end
```

## Monitor cellular telemetry

You can monitor RF parameters and GPS coordinates for cellular interfaces by using the **show logging** command or check the console output.

The following example displays RF parameters and GPS coordinates at every one minute interval:

```
Router#show logging
*Sep 3 17:08:42.081: %CELLWAN-2-MODEM_SIGNAL_PARAM: Cellular0/2/0: 4G: RSSI = -54 dBm RSRP
= -76 dBm RSRQ = -9 dB PCI = 1 SNR = 27.4 dB
Latitude = 12 Deg 56 Min 8.9260 Sec North
Longitude = 77 Deg 41 Min 44.1641 Sec East

*Sep 3 17:09:42.080: %CELLWAN-2-MODEM_SIGNAL_PARAM: Cellular0/2/0: 4G: RSSI = -54 dBm RSRP
= -76 dBm RSRQ = -9 dB PCI = 1 SNR = 29.0 dB
Latitude = 12 Deg 56 Min 8.8989 Sec North
Longitude = 77 Deg 41 Min 44.1570 Sec East
```

The following example displays only RF parameters and not GPS coordinates since GPS is not enabled in the controller:

```
Router#show logging
*Sep 3 17:08:42.081: %CELLWAN-2-MODEM_SIGNAL_PARAM: Cellular0/2/0: 4G: RSSI = -54 dBm RSRP
= -76 dBm RSRQ = -9 dB PCI = 1 SNR = 27.4 dB

*Sep 3 17:09:42.080: %CELLWAN-2-MODEM_SIGNAL_PARAM: Cellular0/2/0: 4G: RSSI = -54 dBm RSRP
= -76 dBm RSRQ = -9 dB PCI = 1 SNR = 29.0 dB
```

## GPS NMEA unique identifier

Starting with Cisco IOS-XE Release 26.1.1, Cisco routers can send a Unique Identifier (UID) to identify the source device when streaming NMEA GPS sentences over UDP on the Cisco IR1101 and Cisco IR1835

routers. UID streaming is supported from the Dead Reckoning (DR) module and from cellular modems that support GNSS. The UID uniquely identifies each router in GPS data processing systems.

**Table 13: Feature History Table**

| Feature name                                                               | Release information | Feature description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Send a UID to identify the unique source when sending GPS coordinates data | Release 26.1.1      | <p>This feature allows you to configure Cisco routers to send a Unique Identifier (UID) while streaming NMEA GPS sentences over UDP.</p> <p>This UID streaming is supported by both the Dead Reckoning (DR) module and cellular modems with GNSS capabilities, enabling each router to be uniquely identified in GPS data processing systems.</p> |

### Cisco proprietary NMEA sentence format

When you configure a UID, a Cisco proprietary NMEA sentence is sent alongside the standard NMEA sentence in the same UDP packet. The format is:

```
$PCSCU,<UID>,<Source>,<Router Time>,<NMEA Sentence Time>,<NMEA Sentence Checksum>,,,,,*95
```

- **csc** indicates Cisco
- **u** indicates this sentence provides a unique identifier
- **<UID>** is the serial number, hostname, or custom ID
- **<Source>** indicates the origin of the NMEA stream:
  - 0: cellular modem0
  - 1: cellular modem1
  - 2: DR module

For example, for cellular modem1, if you use the serial number as the UID, the Cisco proprietary NMEA sentence appears as:

```
$PCSCU,FCW2447P0EU,1,213431.100,213431.000,75,,,,,*95
```

In this NMEA sentence

- **csc** indicates Cisco
- **u** indicates that this sentence provides a unique identifier
- **FCW2447P0EU** indicates serial number as the UID
- **1** indicates source as cellular modem1
- **213431.100** indicates the router time
- **213431.000** indicates the NMEA sentence time

- 75 indicates the NMEA sentence checksum

### NMEA sentence selection

By default, all NMEA sentences from the modem or DR module are sent to the configured UDP destination. To reduce UDP traffic, you can select specific NMEA sentence types to send using a hex bitmask. The table presents each NMEA sentence type and its corresponding HEX value.

*Table 14: NMEA sentence type and HEX value*

| HEX value | NMEA sentence type |
|-----------|--------------------|
| 0x01      | GGA                |
| 0x02      | GSA                |
| 0x04      | GSV                |
| 0x08      | RMC                |
| 0x10      | VTG                |
| 0x20      | GNS                |

## Configure cellular modem GPS NMEA unique identifier

Follow these steps to configure cellular modem GPS NMEA UID.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter the configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Use the **controller cellular slot** command to enter the controller cellular configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router(config)# controller cellular 0/x/0
```

**Step 3** Use the **lte gps nmea uid {custom unique-identifier | hostname | serial-number}** command to enable the GPS NMEA UID.

UID can be any of these:

- **custom**: user-configured string of upto 50 characters.
- **hostname**: host name of the router.
- **serial-number**: serial number of the router.

When using **serial-number** or **hostname**, the UID is automatically extracted and added to the proprietary NMEA sentence. This allows uniform CLI configuration across routers.

When using a **custom ID**, each router must be configured with a *unique-identifier* value to ensure distinct identification.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea uid custom 1428
```

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea uid hostname
```

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea uid serial-number
```

- Step 4** Use the **lte gps nmea ip udp source-address destination-address destination-port stream stream-id** command to specify the source and destination IP address.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea ip udp 10.195.79.179 171.70.55.77 14013 stream 1
```

- Step 5** Use the **lte gps nmea filter hex-value** command to select the sentence types.

*hex-value*: HEX bitmask for NMEA message filtering (0x01:GGA, 0x02:GSA, 0x04:GSV, 0x08:RMC, 0x010:VTG, 0x20:GNS)

This example shows the HEX value if you want to send sentence type as only RMC (0x08) and GNS (0x20):

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea filter 28
```

This example shows the HEX value if you want to send sentence type as only GGA (0x01) and GSA (0x02):

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# lte gps nmea filter 03
```

- Step 6** Use the **end** command to exit the controller configuration mode and return to the privileged EXEC mode.

**Example:**

```
Router(config-controller)# end
```

---





## CHAPTER 16

# Configuring Cisco Resilient Mesh and the WPAN Module

This document provides the necessary configuration details to establish and maintain a functional Cisco Resilient Mesh network using the WPAN module.

- [Cisco Resilient Mesh and WPAN modules, on page 107](#)
- [Configure the WPAN interface, on page 108](#)
- [Configure group multicast, on page 111](#)
- [Configure RPL, on page 112](#)
- [Configure the power outage server, on page 113](#)
- [Configuring Cisco Resilient Mesh Security, on page 113](#)
- [IPv6 multicast agents, on page 116](#)
- [Configure DTLS relay for EST, on page 119](#)
- [TLS Support Matrix, on page 120](#)
- [Mesh stack modes, on page 120](#)
- [Modulation and data rate, on page 123](#)
- [Limited Function Nodes, on page 126](#)
- [Direct parenting of LFN support in Wi-SUN mesh deployment, on page 128](#)
- [Verify WPAN, on page 129](#)
- [IR8100 basic WPAN configurations, on page 130](#)
- [Example of IR8100 configuration settings for CR-Mesh, on page 131](#)
- [ASR configuration example for CR-Mesh, on page 135](#)
- [Check and upgrade the WPAN firmware version, on page 140](#)

## Cisco Resilient Mesh and WPAN modules

A Cisco Resilient Mesh and WPAN Module is a solution for wireless personal area networking and mesh connectivity that:

- supports IEEE 802.15.4e/g standards for WPAN connectivity
- operates on Cisco IR8100 Series Routers running Cisco IOS-XE software, and
- requires configuration and management exclusively through IoT FND with no CLI or graphical user interface for direct configuration.

### Configuration and management reference

Cisco IoT FND provides the user interface for configuring and managing Cisco Resilient Mesh. Typically, Cisco IoT FND handles all configuration and management tasks by communicating with the IR8140H Series WPAN module using Cisco IOS software commands and CoAP Simple Management Protocol (CSMP) TLVs.



**Note** TIP: Cisco Resilient Mesh has no native CLI and no graphical user interface for configuration or management. Cisco IoT FND and CSMP TLVs are used for configuration and management.

For a description of Cisco Resilient Mesh operation, see [Information About Cisco Resilient Mesh and WPAN](#).

The module serial PID is displayed in IOS-XE as IRMH-WPAN-NA:

```
Router#sh inv

+++++
INFO: Please use "show license UDI" to get serial number for licensing.
+++++

NAME: "Chassis", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H Heavy Duty Series Router with PoE"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: V00 , SN: FDO2441J91D

NAME: "Power Supply Module 0", DESCR: "60W AC Power Supply module"
PID: IRMH-PWR60W-AC , VID: V01 , SN: LIT22503LDK

NAME: "module 0", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H-P-K9 Fixed and pluggable Interface Module
 controller"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: , SN:

NAME: "NIM subslot 0/1", DESCR: "IRMH-WPAN-NA Module"
PID: IRMH-WPAN-NA , VID: V00 , SN: FDO24350D18
```

## Configure the WPAN interface

### Procedure

**Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

**Example:**

```
Router# configure terminal
```

**Step 2** Use the **interface wpan slot/port** command to specify the slot and port of the WPAN module.

**Example:**

```
Router(config)# interface wpan 0/1/0
```

**Note**

The WPAN slot is 1 and the port is 0/1.



## Enable dot1x, mesh-security and DHCPv6

You must enable the dot1x (802.1X), mesh-security, and DHCPv6 features to configure the WPAN interface. Follow these steps to enable dot1x, mesh-security and DHCPv6:

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# configure terminal
```
- Step 2** Use the **dot1x system-auth-control** command to enable 802.1X authentication globally on the router.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# dot1x system-auth-control
```
- Step 3** Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to enter interface configuration mode and specify the WPAN interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# interface WPAN 0/1/0
```
- Step 4** Use the **dot1x pae authenticator** command to enable the WPAN interface to respond to messages meant for an IEEE 802.1x authenticator.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# dot1x pae authenticator
```
- Step 5** Use the **authentication host-mode multi-auth** command to set the authentication host mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# authentication host-mode multi-auth
```
- Step 6** Use the **authentication port-control auto** command to set the authentication port control.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# authentication port-control auto
```
- Step 7** Use the **ipv6 enable** command to enable IPv6 on the interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ipv6 enable
```
- Step 8** Use the **ipv6 dhcp relay destination ipv6-address** command to specify a destination address to which client messages are forwarded and to enable DHCP for IPv6 relay service on the interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ipv6 dhcp relay destination 2001:db8::1
```
-

## Configure IEEE154 settings

Follow these steps to configure WPAN radio-related settings:

### Procedure

- 
- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# configure terminal
```
- Step 2** Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to enter interface configuration mode and specify the WPAN interface.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config)# interface WPAN 0/1/0
```
- Step 3** Use the **ieee154 panid id** command to configure the IEEE 802.15.4 Personal Area Network Identifier (PAN ID).
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 panid 121
```
- Step 4** Use the **ieee154 ssid word** command to configure the Service Set Identifier (SSID).
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 ssid myWPANssid
```
- Step 5** Use the **ieee154 notch x-y** command to configure the channel notch list.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 notch 10-15
```
- Note**
A notch is a list of disabled channels from the 902-to-928 MHz range. Ensure your configuration complies with regional regulations.
- Step 6** Use the **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware channel-list** command in privileged EXEC mode to verify the notch configuration.
- Example:**
- ```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware channel-list
```
- Step 7** Use the **ieee154 phy-mode mode-list** command to specify the IEEE 802.15.4 PHY mode.
- Example:**
- ```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 phy-mode 166 165 164 163
```
- Note**
The PHY mode setting selects adaptive modulation. Supported modes range from 1 to 255. Refer to the product documentation for specific modulation indices and rates supported by your hardware.
- Step 8** Use the **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware config** command in privileged EXEC mode to verify the PHY mode configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware config
```

Configure group multicast

Group multicast allows the router to forward multicast traffic to a specific group of devices, which can span multiple PANs.



Note This feature is not supported in Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.3.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

- Step 2** Use the **ipv6 multicast-routing** command to enable IPv6 multicast routing.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
```

- Step 3** Use the **fan-mpl domain domain-number** command to enable MPL.

Example:

```
Router(config)# fan-mpl domain 0
Router(config-mpl)# data-imin 10000
Router(config-mpl)# data-imax 80000
Router(config-mpl)# data-e 1
```

- Step 4** Verify the multicast address reported by the node using the **show wpan interface-id rpl mcast-info {domains | groups}** commands.

Example:

```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 rpl mcast-info domains
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 rpl mcast-info groups
```

- Step 5** Use the **interface wpan interface-id** command to enter interface configuration mode, then use the **mcast-agent interface uplink-interface** command to add the multicast agent interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface WPAN 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# mcast-agent interface gi0/0/0
```

- Step 6** Use the **mcast-agent port** command to add the multicast agent port.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# mcast-agent port
```

Step 7 Use the **mcast-agent group-join** *multicast-group-address* command to add the multicast agent group.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# mcast-agent group-join X:X:X:X::X
```

Step 8 Use the **show wpan interface-id mcast-agent {group-join | interface | ports}** command to verify the multicast agent configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 mcast-agent group-join X:X:X:X::X
```

Configure RPL

Resilient Mesh Endpoints perform routing at the network layer using RPL. For detailed information, refer to RFC 6550.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface WPAN 0/1/0
```

Step 2 Use the **rpl parameter** command to configure specific RPL settings.

Available parameters include `dag-lifetime`, `dag-lifetime-unit`, `dio-dbl`, `dio-min`, `pon`, `route-poisoning`, `storing-mode`, and `version-incr-time`.

Step 3 Use the **rpl pon instance** command to enable the Power Outage Notification (PON) instance.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# rpl pon instance
```

Note

This option is supported only in WiSUN mode. If enabled, the node uses the new PON instance for outage reports.

Step 4 Use the **redistribute rpl** command within a routing protocol configuration to redistribute RPL routes.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ipv6 router ospf 100
Router(config-rtr)# redistribute rpl metric 3
```

Configure the power outage server

In the event of a power outage, Mesh Endpoints (MEs) perform the necessary functions to conserve energy and notify neighboring nodes of the outage. Routers relay the power outage notification to a power notification server, which then issues push notifications to customers to relate information on the outage. In most cases, the outage server is your IoT FND server.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface WPAN 0/1/0
```

Step 2 Use the **outage server ipv6-address-or-fqdn** command to specify the IPv6 address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the power outage server.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# outage server 2001:c1::8a43:e1ff:fec3:2aa
```

```
Router(config-if)# outage server fnd.cisco.com
```

Configuring Cisco Resilient Mesh Security

Cisco Resilient Mesh security utilizes the IEEE 802.1X protocol, also known as Extensible Authentication Protocol over LAN (EAPOL), to manage authentication processes within the mesh network.



Note Cisco Resilient Mesh does not support TLS 1.1. If the RADIUS server does not support TLS 1.2, you must disable TLS 1.1 on the RADIUS server for compatibility.

Configure mesh key

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **mesh-security set mesh-key interface wpan slot/port key hex-string** command to set the mesh key.

Example:

```
Router# mesh-security set mesh-key interface wpan 0/1/0 key 1234567891234567
```

The hex-string must be an even number of hex digits, up to 32.

Step 2 Use the **mesh-security set mesh-lfn-key interface wpan slot/port key hex-string** command to configure the mesh LFN key.

Example:

```
Router# mesh-security set mesh-lfn-key interface wpan 0/1/0 key 12312311
```

Step 3 Use the **interface wpan slot/port** and **mesh-security mesh-key lifetime value** commands to configure the mesh key lifetime.

Example:

```
Router(config)# int wpan 0/1/0
Router(config-if)# mesh-security mesh-key lifetime 60
```

Note

- The mesh-key lifetime value should be less than 120 days (10,368,000 seconds).
- This command should only be used by an expert mesh-security administrator.
- Mesh-Security configuration and keys do not appear in `show running-config` or `show startup-config` command output.

Step 4 Use these commands to configure LFN mesh-key lifetime parameters:

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# mesh-security mesh-lfn-key revocation-lifetime-reduction 30
Router(config-if)# mesh-security mesh-lfn-key rollover-ratio 180
Router(config-if)# mesh-security mesh-lfn-key lifetime 7776000 ptk-lifetime
31104000 pmk-lifetime 46656000
```

Cisco Resilient Mesh Security configuration example

The example shows what is required for mesh-security.



Note The MTU setting on the AAA server must be set to 800 bytes or lower, because IEEE802.1x implementation in RMEs limits the MTU to 800 bytes. RADIUS servers can use auth-port 1812 and acct-port 1813 instead of 1645 and 1646, respectively.

```
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa group server radius nps-group
server name nps-radius
!
aaa authentication enable default none
aaa authentication dot1x default group nps-group
<...snip...>
dot1x system-auth-control
!
<...snip...>
!
!
```

```

interface Wpan0/1/0
  no ip address
  ip broadcast-address 0.0.0.0
  no ip route-cache
  ieee154 beacon-async min-interval 120 max-interval 900 suppression-coefficient 1
  ieee154 panid 7224
  ieee154 ssid migration_far2
  ieee154 txpower -30
  authentication host-mode multi-auth
  authentication port-control auto
  ipv6 address 2092:1:1:1::/64
  ipv6 enable
  ipv6 dhcp relay destination 2010:A0B0:1001:22::2
  dot1x pae authenticator
  mesh-security mesh-key lifetime 259200
end
!
!
radius server nps-radius
  address ipv4 <IP address> auth-port 1645 acct-port 1646
  key <RADIUS key>
!

```

Verifying Cisco Resilient Mesh Security configuration

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable the router and enter the privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **show dot1x all details** command to verify the 802.1X security configuration.

Note

The output for this command shows only new or re-authentications. It does not show nodes that are in the process of warm-starting (and have cached the security credentials).

It displays the configuration and clients of the Cisco Resilient Mesh 802.1X security configuration.

Example:

```

Router# show dot1x all details
Sysauthcontrol           Enabled
Dot1x Protocol Version   3
Dot1x Info for WPAN0/1/0
-----
PAE                       = AUTHENTICATOR
QuietPeriod               = 60
ServerTimeout             = 0
SuppTimeout               = 30
ReAuthMax                 = 2
MaxReq                    = 2
TxPeriod                  = 30
Dot1x Authenticator Client List Empty

```

Step 3 Use the **show mesh-security keys lfn** command to verify the LFN mesh security keys.

Example:

```
Router# show mesh-security keys lfn
Mesh Interface: WPAN0/1/0
LFN Pairwise Master Key Lifetime : 540 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
LFN Pairwise Temporal Key Lifetime: 360 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
LFN Mesh Key Lifetime : 90 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
Rollover ratio: 180
Revocation reduction: 30
LFN Key ID : 0 *
Key expiry : Wed Jun 7 11:35:37 2023
Time remaining : 81 Days 21 Hours 23 Minutes 21 Seconds
LFN Key ID : 1
Key expiry : Tue Sep 5 11:35:37 2023
Time remaining : 171 Days 21 Hours 23 Minutes 21 Seconds
```

Step 4 Use the **show mesh-security keys** command to verify the mesh-security set-key configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show mesh-security keys
Mesh Interface: WPAN0/1/0
Pairwise Master Key Lifetime : 120 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
Pairwise Temporal Key Lifetime: 60 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
Mesh Key Lifetime : 30 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
Key ID : 3 *
Key expiry : Sun Dec 6 20:28:12 2020
Time remaining : 0 Days 1 Hours 5 Minutes 11 Seconds
```

Step 5 Use the **show mesh-security session all** command to verify the mesh security session details.

Note

The output for this command shows only new or re-authentications. It does not show nodes that are in the process of warm-starting (and have cached the security credentials).

Example:

```
Router# show mesh-security session all
MAC Address      State           Mesh Keys
00:07:81:08:00:3C:25:03  Encryption Enabled  11..
00:17:3B:0B:00:21:00:2F  Encryption Enabled  .1..
00:07:81:08:00:3C:22:02  Encryption Enabled  11..
00:07:81:08:00:3C:25:02  Encryption Enabled  11..
00:07:81:08:00:3C:22:0A  Encryption Enabled  11..
00:07:81:08:00:3C:22:06  Encryption Enabled  11..
00:07:81:08:00:3C:24:05  Encryption Enabled  ....
00:07:81:08:00:3C:24:08  Encryption Enabled  ....
00:07:81:08:00:3C:23:01  Encryption Enabled  11..
```

Step 6 Use the **show mesh-security interface wpan <slot>/<port>** command to verify the mesh security interface status.

IPv6 multicast agents

An IPv6 multicast agent is a network configuration component that

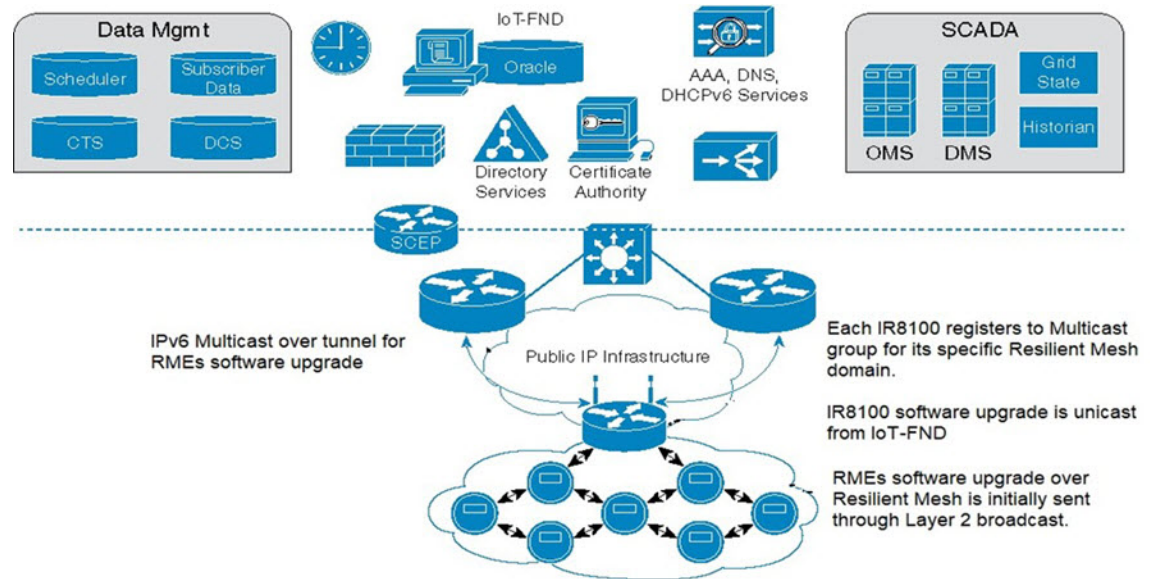
- enables multicasting traffic between IoT FND, or the Advanced-Metering Infrastructure (AMI) application server in a Network Operations Center (NOC), and the Cisco Resilient Mesh network

- requires proper configuration on the head-end router (Cisco ASR 1000) as well as on IoT FND and the AMI head-end server, and
- facilitates IPv6 multicast communication for software upgrades, demand reset messages, demand response messages, targeted pings, and meter group operations.

IPv6 multicast configuration characteristics

The IPv6 FAN with a multicast configuration displays the following architecture:

Figure 1: IPv6 FAN with multicast configuration

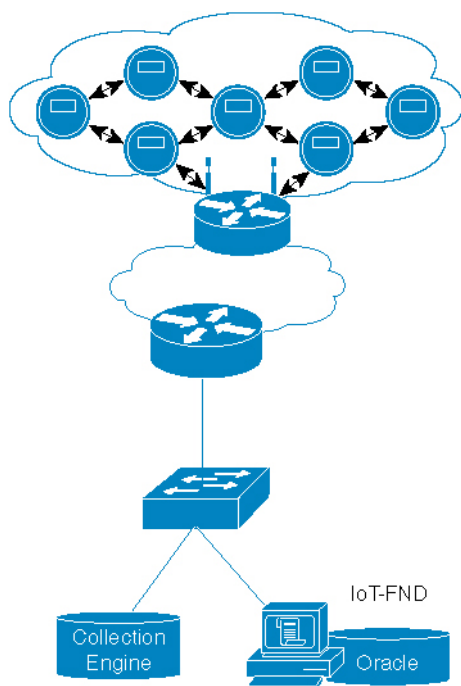


The IPv6 multicast configuration has the following characteristics:

- IPv6 Multicast is used between the IoT FND or CE and the Cisco Resilient Mesh endpoints when performing:
 - Software upgrade of the endpoints
 - Demand reset messages
 - Demand response messages (there could be more than one group for this per meter)
 - Targeted pings (group of meters on a given feeder, for example)
 - Group of meters with the same read time/cycle
- Each PAN is a multicast group with the unicast-prefix-based multicast address (RFC 3306)
- The head-end router routes (PIMv6 SSM) all multicast traffic to the unicast-prefix-based multicast address to the IR8100 (MLDv2)
- IR8100 multicast agent receives the multicast

The multicast operation in an IPv6 FAN operates as follows:

Figure 2: Multicast operation overview in IPv6 FAN



There are two ways to forward multicast traffic to an IR8100 running Cisco IOS-XE from the head-end:

- Configure the IR8100 as a multicast client where the tunnel is configured with **ipv6 mld join-group**.

For this method, configure the IR8100 tunnel interface with MLD as follows:

```
Router (config)# interface Tunnel100
Router (config-if)# ipv6 mld join-group ff38:40:2001:0db8:beef:cafe:0:1
```

- Enable IPv6 multicast routing on the and configure it as a PIM6 router. This is the preferred method and is shown in the next section.



Note Note: In above example, the IP address is constructed from the the IPv6 subnet of WPAN.

Configure IR8100 as PIM6 router

The preferred method of forwarding multicast traffic to the IR8100 is to enable IPv6 multicast routing and configure the device as a PIM6 router. Because the unicast-prefix-based multicast address is required for WPAN, it must be configured under loopback0, and the IR8100 must be configured to become a PIM-neighbor with the ASR head-end.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **ipv6 multicast-routing** command to enable IPv6 multicast routing.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ipv6 multicast-routing
```

- Step 2** Use the **interface loopback 0** and **ipv6 mld join-group *multicast-address*** commands to configure MLD under loopback0.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface loopback 0
Router(config-if)# ipv6 mld join-group ff38:40:2001:0db8:beef:cafe:0:1
```

- Step 3** Use the **ipv6 pim rp-address *address*** command to configure the IPv6 PIM Rendezvous Point (RP).

Example:

```
Router(config)# ipv6 pim rp-address 2333::1
```

- Step 4** Configure the ASR/CSR head-end to support the PIM neighbor relationship.

Example:

```
ipv6 pim rp-address 2001:DB9::1 bidir
ipv6 pim spt-threshold infinity
!
interface Loopback0
ipv6 address 2001:DB9::1/128
ipv6 pim hello-interval 500
ipv6 pim
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
ipv6 pim
```

Configure DTLS relay for EST

Cisco Resilient Mesh uses EST over CoAP/DTLS/UDP for certificate enrollment. During the initial bootstrapping process, nodes that have already joined the network act as DTLS relays for nodes being bootstrapped.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to enter interface configuration mode for the WPAN interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface wpan 0/1/0
```

- Step 2** Use the **dtls-relay ipv6-address [port *port-number*] [max-sessions *number*] [lifetime *seconds*]** command to configure the DTLS relay.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# dtls-relay 2060:FACD::6 port 61629 max-sessions 10 lifetime 300
```

- Step 3** Use the **show wpan 0/1/0 config** command to verify the DTLS relay configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 config
```

TLS Support Matrix

Refer to the TLS support matrix to identify the supported TLS versions in Router, WPAN, and Resilient Mesh Endpoints across IOS XE, Classic IOS, and CR-Mesh in Wi-SUN and CG-Mesh deployments.

Table 15: TLS Support

Platform	Software version	Stack mode	TLS versions	Notes
IR8140	Cisco IOS XE	Not applicable	TLS 1.2, TLS 1.3	Traffic to and from the router; endpoint traffic is passthrough.
Cisco 1000 Series Connected Grid Router (CGR)	Cisco IOS	Not applicable	TLS 1.2	Traffic to and from the router; endpoint traffic is passthrough.
WPAN	Not applicable	Wi-SUN	Not applicable	Only transports endpoint traffic.
WPAN	Not applicable	CG-Mesh	Not applicable	Only transports endpoint traffic.
Resilient Mesh Endpoint (RME)	6.2.x	Wi-SUN	TLS 1.2	EAP-TLS authentication.
Resilient Mesh Endpoint (RME)	6.2.x	CG-Mesh	TLS 1.0, TLS 1.2	EAP-TLS authentication.
Resilient Mesh Endpoint (RME)	5.6.x	CG-Mesh	TLS 1.0	EAP-TLS authentication.

Mesh stack modes

Mesh stack modes let you choose between a Cisco proprietary mesh implementation (CG-Mesh mode) and an implementation based on Wi-SUN open-standards (Wi-SUN mode) for device communication.

- Push the stack mode and scheduled switch time configurations to all the meters using Cisco IoT FND, leveraging CSMP TLVs 340, 343, and 344.
- Ensure all meters are connected to the Mesh and Cisco IoT FND, so they receive these configurations. Verify that every meter has the latest stack mode settings before switching the border router to a different stack mode.
- If a meter does not receive the stack mode switch time, it will automatically switch to the configured new stack mode after being offline for a maximum of 24 hours.

Configure CG-Mesh stack mode

CG-Mesh mode refers to CR-Mesh operation using Cisco proprietary mesh networking implementation instead of Wi-SUN open-standards based implementation.

**Note**

- Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.2 supports both CG-Mesh and Wi-SUN stack modes. CR-Mesh Release 6.3 and above supports only Wi-SUN mode.
- Changing stack mode requires a WPAN module reload.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to specify the WPAN interface and enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface wpan 0/1/0
```

Step 3 Use the **no wisun-mode** command to enable CG-Mesh mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# no wisun-mode
```

Step 4 Use the **ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 60** command to set the beacon version increase interval.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 60
```

Step 5 Use the **hw-module subslot 0/1 reload** command to reload the WPAN interface.

Example:

```
Router# hw-module subslot 0/1 reload
```

Step 6 Use the **ieee154 phy-mode 2** command to set the PHY mode to a supported value.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 phy-mode 2
```

Step 7 Use the **ieee154 wisun-dwell ucast-dwell-int value bcast-dwell-int value bcast-int value** command to change the unicast dwell, broadcast dwell, and broadcast interval.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 wisun-dwell ucast-dwell-int 125 bcast-dwell-int 125 bcast-int 500
```

Note

If not configured, all parameters use default values.

You have successfully configured the CR-Mesh mode.

Configure Wi-SUN stack mode

Wireless Smart Utility Network (Wi-SUN) mode is supported from Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.1 and later releases.



Note

- Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.2 supports both CG-Mesh and Wi-SUN modes. CR-Mesh Release 6.3 and above supports only Wi-SUN mode.
- Changing Wi-SUN mode requires a module reload.
- In Wi-SUN mode, storing mode is not supported.
- In Wi-SUN mode, the mesh key should be reconfigured after changing PANID.

When the IR8100 is in Wi-SUN mode, if there are nodes in the WPAN route table and route poisoning is not enabled, changing the PANID will enable temporary RPL poisoning. It will be disabled automatically. The new PANID will take effect after 3 DIO messages are sent. Validate the connectivity to the IR8100 router.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **interface wpan 0/1/0** command to specify the WPAN interface and enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface wpan 0/1/0
```

Step 3 Use the **wisun-mode** command to enable Wi-SUN mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# wisun-mode
```

Step 4 Use the **ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 0** command to set the beacon version increase interval.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 0
```

Step 5 Use the **hw-module subslot 0/1 reload** command to reload the WPAN interface.

Example:

```
Router# hw-module subslot 0/1 reload
```

Step 6 Use the **ieee154 phy-mode 66** command to set the PHY mode to a Wi-SUN supported value.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 phy-mode 66
```

Step 7 (Optional) Use the **ieee154 wisun-dwell ucast-dwell-int value bcast-dwell-int value bcast-int value** command to change the unicast dwell, broadcast dwell, and broadcast interval.

If not configured, all parameters use default values.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ieee154 wisun-dwell ucast-dwell-int 125 bcast-dwell-int 125 bcast-int 500
```

Modulation and data rate

Modulation and data rate (MDR) is a FAN network feature that

- enables devices to adapt data rates or RF modulation based on environmental conditions and neighboring device capabilities
- supports multiple PHY mode configurations in Border Router (BR) and endpoints to handle varying wireless link conditions, and
- advertises configured PHY modes through POM IE (PHY Operating Mode Information Element) as specified in FAN 1.1v5 spec 6.3.4.7.1.

MDR configuration and operation details

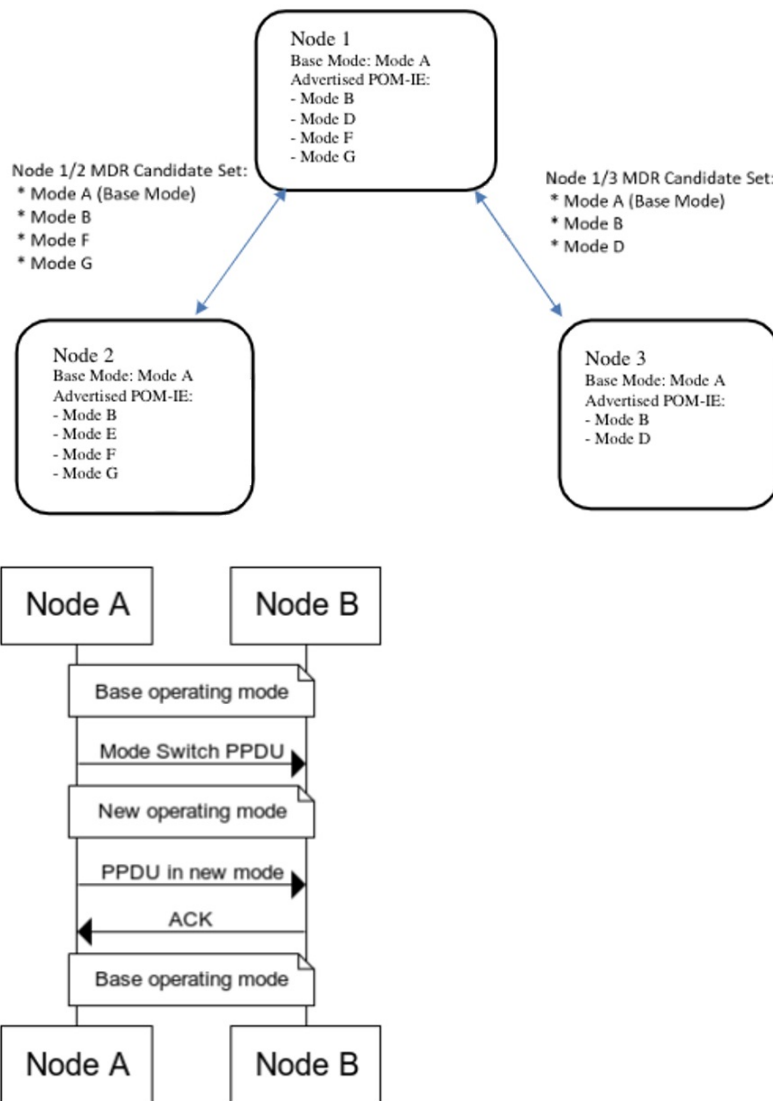
FAN networks typically consist of devices with different physical layer capabilities. The wireless links between different devices in the network may vary greatly due to distance, transmission power, noise, or other interference. Because of these differences, devices should be able to adapt the data rate or RF modulation based on the environment conditions and the neighboring devices communicated with. Multiple PHY mode configuration in Border Router (BR) and End points will help to achieve the above use case. MDR feature is an already supported feature (spec 1.1v2) with PCAP IE as a header for advertising the configured PHY mode. In FAN 1.1v5, this PCAP IE been advertised as POM IE (Phy Operating Mode Information Element). Refer to FAN 1.1v5 spec 6.3.4.7.1 PHY Operating Mode Discovery.

Supported platforms and software releases:

- Border Router: IR8140H, Cisco IOS XE Dulin 17.11.1
- Endpoint: IR510, IR530, WPAN (OFDM and FSK modules), Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.6

PHY operating mode selection and switching process:

Based on the set of PHY operating modes advertised by both of a mesh node and a neighbour (indicated by their respective POM-IEs), the intersection of those PHY sets (including the base mode) are candidates for operating mode switching between the two nodes.



Prerequisites for MDR implementation:

All nodes in a PAN must be administratively configured to use the same base PHY operating mode. Neighbor nodes are able to mutually discover each other's PHY operating modes and make application layer decisions to temporarily "switch" to one of the non-base PHY operating modes.

The following combinations are supported:

- FSK + FSK
- FSK + OFDM option1
- FSK + OFDM option2
- FSK + OFDM option3
- FSK + OFDM option4
- OFDM option1

- OFDM option2
- OFDM option3
- OFDM option4

Combination of different OFDM options are not supported for configuration.

MDR feature limitations:

- Up to 4 phy mode configurations are supported on the Border Router.
- Up to 15 PHY operating modes in a POM IE can be processed, as specified in the Wi-SUN Spec.
- CR-Mesh 6.6 MDR feature cannot work with CR-Mesh 6.5 Release.
- CR-Mesh 6.6 supports Wi-SUN mode only.

Configuration requirements:

When configuring multiple PHY modes, the first mode **MUST** be the base mode. On the mesh endpoint, it should be the same base mode.

On IR8140H, use the **ieee154 phy-mode** command to configure PHY mode:

```
FDO2553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#ieee154 phy-mode ?
Supported Phy-Modes:
64:Rate=50 kb/s; Modulation=2FSK; Modulation Index=1.0; FEC=OFF; Channel Spacing=200 kHz
66:Rate=150 kb/s; Modulation=2FSK; Modulation Index=0.5; FEC=OFF; Channel Spacing=400 kHz
134:Rate=2400 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=1; MCS=6; Channel Spacing=1200 kHz
144:Rate=50 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=2; MCS=0; Channel Spacing=800 kHz
147:Rate=400 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=2; MCS=3; Channel Spacing=800 kHz
149:Rate=800 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=2; MCS=5; Channel Spacing=800 kHz
150:Rate=1200 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=2; MCS=6; Channel Spacing=800 kHz
161:Rate=50 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=3; MCS=1; Channel Spacing=400 kHz
163:Rate=200 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=3; MCS=3; Channel Spacing=400 kHz
165:Rate=400 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=3; MCS=5; Channel Spacing=400 kHz
166:Rate=600 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=3; MCS=6; Channel Spacing=400 kHz
182:Rate=300 kb/s; Modulation=OFDM; Option=4; MCS=6; Channel Spacing=200 kHz

<1-255> Enter a value from the list given by: <config-if>ieee154 phy-mode ?

FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#ieee154 phy-mode
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#ieee154 phy-mode 64 144 147 150
```

PHY mode configured on Endpoint(IR510) – tlv 35 output

▼ phyModelList	
▼ PhyModelInfo	
phyMode	0x40 (64)
txPower	30 dBm
▼ PhyModelInfo	
phyMode	0x90 (144)
txPower	28 dBm
▼ PhyModelInfo	
phyMode	0x93 (147)
txPower	26 dBm
bandID	4
networkScale	small (1)

MDR configuration verification

The following command shows the operating on base PHY mode.

```
FD02553J6BF#show wpan 0/1/0 link-neighbors table
----- WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE [1] -----
EUI64          RSSIF  RSSIR  LQIF  LQIR  FIRST_HEARD  LAST_HEARD  MODF  MODR
00173B0500540024 -76   -97   255   95    18:38:04    00:04:57    64    64
6C8BD310003DA362 -43   -67   255   65    18:37:34    00:05:07    64    64
6C8BD310003DA3C4 -44   -67   255   65    18:37:31    00:04:33    64    64
Number of Entries in WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE: 3
```

The following example shows that the node operating PHY mode is switched from 64 to 147, which is the common highest operating mode between BR and IR510.

```
FD02553J6BF#show wpan 0/1/0 link-neighbors table
----- WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE [1] -----
EUI64          RSSIF  RSSIR  LQIF  LQIR  FIRST_HEARD  LAST_HEARD  MODF  MODR
00173B0500540024 -76   -97   255   95    18:38:04    00:04:57    64    64
6C8BD310003DA362 -45   -69   255   65    18:37:34    00:06:07    147   147
6C8BD310003DA3C4 -44   -67   255   65    18:37:31    00:05:35    64    64
Number of Entries in WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE: 3
```

Limited Function Nodes

A Limited Function Node (LFN) is a battery-powered end device that

- operates as RPL leaf nodes in the mesh network, relieved of RPL routing functionality
- provides battery lifetime expected in the range of 15 to 20 years
- cannot be the parent of other nodes in the mesh network, and
- has its own unicast interval, broadcast schedule, and mesh keys in a FAN.

LFN implementation details

Wi-SUN FAN 1.1v5 details the implementation of LFN node in a FAN Mesh network. CR-Mesh 6.6 release enhances LFN support in IR8140 (CABO) WPAN Border router and IR510. IOS XE 17.11 release implements the authentication of LFN node in a FAN.

Supported platforms:

- IR8140H, Cisco IOS XE Dulin 17.11.1
- WPAN-OFDM module, Cisco Resilient Mesh Release 6.6

LFN configuration commands:

Cisco IOS XE Dulin 17.11.1 support both FAN 1.0 and FAN 1.1 specifications. In order to have LFN in the Border Router, enable LFN for onboarding LFN mesh nodes in your PAN by using the following commands:

```
FD02553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FD02553J6BF(config-if)#lfn
```

LFN follows different PAN version in the FAN network and it has its own unicast interval and broadcast schedule. From Border Router, you can configure the broadcast interval for LFN by using the following commands:

```
FDO2553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#ieee154 lfn-bcast interval 300000 sync-period 1
```

Configure LFN mesh key in Border Router:

```
FDO2553J6BF#mesh-security set mesh-lfn-key interface wpan 0/1/0 key 12312312
```

Configure LFN mesh key lifetime in Border Router under global CLI:

```
FDO2553J6BF#mesh-security mesh-lfn-key lifetime 7776000 ptk-lifetime 31104000 pmk-lifetime
46656000
```

Configure LFN mesh rollover-ratio and revocation-lifetime-reduction:

```
FDO2553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#mesh-security mesh-lfn-key revocation-lifetime-reduction 30
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#mesh-security mesh-lfn-key rollover-ratio 180
```

Configure Mesh-key-exchange timeout:

By default, retry timer of LFN node is 10s during key exchange. Use the following commands to increase the key exchange timeout retry.

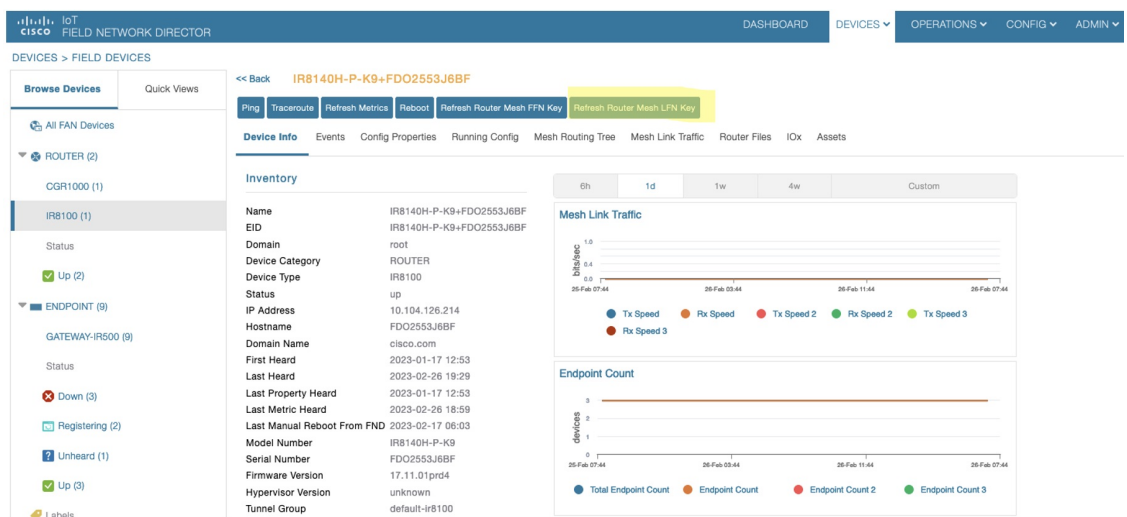
```
FDO2553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#mesh-security key-exchange-message-timeout 30
```

Configure Routing Lifetime for LFN:

LFN nodes are battery powered node. By default, the recommended Registration-lifetime is 24hrs. In Border Router, LFN needs to be maintained in routing table for 24hrs by using the following commands:

```
FDO2553J6BF(config)#interface wpan 0/1/0
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#rpl dag-lifetime 60
FDO2553J6BF(config-if)#rpl dag-lifetime-unit 1440
```

Configuring mesh refresh key for LFN from FND:



Verification commands:

To check the LFN version in Border Router:

```
FDO2553J6BF#show wpan 0/1/0 config | i LFN
LFN version: 8929 (2232)
FDO2553J6BF#
```

To check LFN broadcast interval:

```
FDO2553J6BF#show wpan 0/1/0 hardware config | i lfn
lfn_bcast:          interval 300000 sync-period 1
FDO2553J6BF#
```

Border router supports up to 3 keys for LFN. To check LFN Mesh-security Key:

```
FDO2553J6BF#show mesh-security keys lfn
```

```
FDO2553J6BF#show mesh-security keys lfn
Mesh Interface: WPAN0/1/0

LFN Pairwise Master Key Lifetime : 540 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
LFN Pairwise Temporal Key Lifetime: 360 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds
LFN Mesh Key Lifetime           : 90 Days 0 Hours 0 Minutes 0 Seconds

Rollover ratio: 180
Revocation reduction: 30

LFN Key ID      : 0 *
Key expiry      : Wed May 24 13:29:48 2023
Time remaining  : 86 Days 12 Hours 36 Minutes 29 Seconds

LFN Key ID      : 1
Key expiry      : Tue Aug 22 13:29:48 2023
Time remaining  : 176 Days 12 Hours 36 Minutes 29 Seconds

LFN Key ID      : 2
Key expiry      : Mon Nov 20 13:29:48 2023
Time remaining  : 266 Days 12 Hours 36 Minutes 29 Seconds
```

Limitations:

- LFNs are battery powered nodes and work in their own unicast schedule. It is recommended to use long timeout values (180s) when trying to onboard LFN from Border Router.
- IR8140H does not support direct parenting of LFN.

Direct parenting of LFN support in Wi-SUN mesh deployment

Direct parenting of LFN support in Wi-SUN mesh deployment is a network capability that

- enables IR8140 routers to directly parent Limited Function Nodes (LFNs) in Wi-SUN mesh deployments
- supports battery-powered low-energy endpoints typically used for utility metering of electricity, gas, and water
- allows LFN endpoints to connect to IR8140 as a child but prevents them from parenting other devices in a mesh network.

Implementation and verification details

From Cisco IOS-XE Release 17.14.1, the IR8140 routers support direct parenting of Limited Function Nodes (LFNs) in Wi-SUN Mesh deployments. Several such LFN endpoints connect to a border router forming a sensor network to implement an Advanced Metering Infrastructure (AMI) deployment.

Previous releases supported IR8140 indirectly parenting LFNs through a partner Full Function Node (FFN) device. For more information, see [Limited Function Node](#).

Use this command given as example to determine if the router has enabled LFN support:

```
IR8140#show wpan 0/2/0 hardware configuration
lfn support: Enabled
```

Use this command given as example to verify the node connected to the router is an LFN or FFN:

```
IR8140#show wpan 0/2/0 link-neighbors ns
----- WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE WITH NS [2] -----
EUI64          IPV6 address          Lifetime    Last NS      Node Type
00173B05004D0030 2001:1111:1111:1111:55DC:BEF3:4D9C:FD87 240        15:29:08    LFN
Number of Entries in WPAN LINK NEIGHBOR TABLE: 1
Current time : 15:30:29
```

Verify WPAN

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

- Step 2** Use the **show wpan interface-id** command to view all available WPAN show commands.

Example:

```
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 ?
```

Note

You can use these commands to display specific WPAN configuration and status information:

Command	Description
show wpan config	Displays the WPAN basic configuration.
show wpan hardware	Displays WPAN hardware information. Use show wpan 0/1/0 hardware ? for options.
show wpan packet-count	Displays incoming and outgoing packet counts for WPAN traffic.
show wpan link-neighbors	Displays information about WPAN link neighbors (1-hop range). Note: Minimum RSSI to join is -95 dBm.
show wpan outage-table	Displays recent power-outage notification (PON) events in the PAN during the past hour.
show wpan restoration-table	Displays recent power restoration notification (PRN) events in the PAN during the past hour.

Command	Description
show wpan rpl	Displays WPAN RPL information.
debug wpan all	Displays all WPAN debugging messages, including errors, fan-mpl, info, packets, and rpl.

IR8100 basic WPAN configurations

An IR8100 basic WPAN configuration is a network setup that

- includes Wi-SUN mode operation on the WPAN interface
- configures IEEE 802.15.4 physical layer settings and beacon parameters, and
- enables IPv6 addressing with DHCP server functionality for connected devices.

WPAN configuration details

The WPAN interface configuration includes several key components:

- **wisun-mode**: Enables Wi-SUN (Wireless Smart Utility Network) operation mode
- **ieee154 phy-mode 66**: Sets the IEEE 802.15.4 physical layer mode
- **ieee154 beacon-async**: Configures asynchronous beacon intervals and suppression
- **ieee154 panid**: Defines the Personal Area Network identifier
- **ieee154 ssid**: Sets the network service set identifier
- **rpl dag-lifetime**: Configures RPL (Routing Protocol for Low-Power and Lossy Networks) parameters



Note The **dwell** attribute indicates the maximum transmission time on a channel to comply with government regulations, most of which limit transmissions on a channel to *X* ms within *Y* ms (minimum and maximum duration). The **dwell** command allows you to set both *X* and *Y*. In the U.S., they are typically 400 ms to 20000 ms.

Basic WPAN interface configuration

The example shows a typical WPAN interface configuration on the IR8100:

```
interface WPAN0/1/0
 wisun-mode
 ieee154 phy-mode 66
 ieee154 beacon-async min-interval 15 max-interval 60 suppression-coefficient 1
 ieee154 panid 12571
 ieee154 ssid sit-cabo
 ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 0
 rpl dag-lifetime 60
```

```

rpl dio-min 14
rpl version-incr-time 10
ipv6 address AAAA:BBBB:CCCC:3::1/64
ipv6 dhcp server MeterNetwork rapid-commit
authentication host-mode multi-auth
authentication port-control auto
dot1x pae authenticator

```

Example of IR8100 configuration settings for CR-Mesh

The configuration settings for an IR8100 router in a Cisco Resilient Mesh network is given in the example.

```

IR8100#sh run
Building configuration...

Current configuration : 9107 bytes
!
! Last configuration change at 16:53:48 CST Tue Feb 16 2021 by cisc0
!
version 17.5
service timestamps debug datetime msec localtime show-timezone year
service timestamps log datetime msec
service call-home
service unsupported-transceiver
platform qfp utilization monitor load 80
platform punt-keepalive disable-kernel-core
platform shell
!
hostname IR8100
!
boot-start-marker
boot system
flash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210207_015223_V17_5_0_161.SSA.bin
boot-end-marker
!
!
logging buffered 1000000
no logging console
enable password cisc0
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa group server radius CGCDN
server name wisun_radius
!
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authentication dot1x default group CGCDN
aaa authorization exec default local
!
aaa common-criteria policy iiot_policy
min-length 10
max-length 127
numeric-count 1
upper-case 1
lower-case 1
char-changes 4
!
!
aaa session-id common
clock timezone CST 8 0
!

```

Example of IR8100 configuration settings for CR-Mesh

```

!
login on-success log
no ipv6 address-validate
ipv6 unicast-routing
ipv6 dhcp pool dhcp-node
address prefix 2001:CABB::/64 lifetime 60000 36000
vendor-specific 26484
suboption 1 address 2060:FACD::50
suboption 2 address 2060:FACD::50
!
ipv6 multicast-routing
!
!
subscriber templating
!
!
multilink bundle-name authenticated
!
!
crypto pki trustpoint SLA-TrustPoint
enrollment pkcs12
revocation-check crl
!
crypto pki trustpoint TP-self-signed-3764981121
enrollment selfsigned
subject-name cn=IOS-Self-Signed-Certificate-3764981121
revocation-check none
rsa-keypair TP-self-signed-3764981121
!
!
crypto pki certificate chain SLA-TrustPoint
certificate ca 01
30820321 30820209 A0030201 02020101 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 0B050030
32310E30 0C060355 040A1305 43697363 6F312030 1E060355 04031317 43697363
6F204C69 63656E73 696E6720 526F6F74 20434130 1E170D31 33303533 30313934
3834375A 170D3338 30353330 31393438 34375A30 32310E30 0C060355 040A1305
43697363 6F312030 1E060355 04031317 43697363 6F204C69 63656E73 696E6720
526F6F74 20434130 82012230 0D06092A 864886F7 0D010101 05000382 010F0030
82010A02 82010100 A6BCBD96 131E05F7 145EA72C 2CD686E6 17222EA1 F1EFF64D
CBB4C798 212AA147 C655D8D7 9471380D 8711441E 1AAF071A 9CAE6388 8A38E520
1C394D78 462EF239 C659F715 B98C0A59 5BBB5CBD 0CFEBEA3 700A8BF7 D8F256EE
4AA4E80D DB6FD1C9 60B1FD18 FFC69C96 6FA68957 A2617DE7 104FDC5F EA2956AC
7390A3EB 2B5436AD C847A2C5 DAB553EB 69A9A535 58E9F3E3 COBD23CF 58BD7188
68E69491 20F320E7 948E71D7 AE3BCC84 F10684C7 4BC8E00F 539BA42B 42C68BB7
C7479096 B4CB2D62 EA2F505D C7B062A4 6811D95B E8250FC4 5D5D5FB8 8F27D191
C55F0D76 61F9A4CD 3D992327 A8BB03BD 4E6D7069 7CBADF8B DF5F4368 95135E44
DFC7C6CF 04DD7FD1 02030100 01A34230 40300E06 03551D0F 0101FF04 04030201
06300F06 03551D13 0101FF04 05300301 01FF301D 0603551D 0E041604 1449DC85
4B3D31E5 1B3E6A17 606AF333 3D3B4C73 E8300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 010B0500
03820101 00507F24 D3932A66 86025D9F E838AE5C 6D4DF6B0 49631C78 240DA905
604EDCDE FF4FED2B 77FC460E CD636FDB DD44681E 3A5673AB 9093D3B1 6C9E3D8B
D98987BF E40CBD9E 1AECA0C2 2189BB5C 8FA85686 CD98B646 5575B146 8DFC66A8
467A3DF4 4D565700 6ADF0F0D CF835015 3C04FF7C 21E878AC 11BA9CD2 55A9232C
7CA7B7E6 C1AF74F6 152E99B7 B1FCF9BB E973DE7F 5BDDEB86 C71E3B49 1765308B
5FB0DA06 B92AFE7F 494E8A9E 07B85737 F3A58BE1 1A48A229 C37C1E69 39F08678
80DDCD16 D6BACECA EEB7CF9F 8428787B 35202CDC 60E4616A B623CDBD 230E3AFB
418616A9 4093E049 4D10AB75 27E86F73 932E35B5 8862FDAE 0275156F 719BB2F0
D697DF7F 28
quit
crypto pki certificate chain TP-self-signed-3764981121
certificate self-signed 01
30820330 30820218 A0030201 02020101 300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 05050030
31312F30 2D060355 04031326 494F532D 53656C66 2D536967 6E65642D 43657274
69666963 6174652D 33373634 39383131 3231301E 170D3230 31313130 30373239

```



```

31385A17 0D333031 31313030 37323931 385A3031 312F302D 06035504 03132649
4F532D53 656C662D 5369676E 65642D43 65727469 66696361 74652D33 37363439
38313132 31308201 22300D06 092A8648 86F70D01 01010500 0382010F 00308201
0A028201 0100E821 301D5675 0B3BA0B8 81273D9F B82581E9 9BACAE41 D501A5E9
A8E98EFB 2C25B7C9 A0E0CF17 C39FEBBA E673C855 BDA9379C BDDC68DC 377C2589
21CD8189 6AC98A97 9B5FA5D5 17E51A1F 3DB8BC88 1A844B1E EE69DA60 8D84620A
8A023D87 D93F3ADF 75D99D81 E06BCEF6 AC7C3A2E D70C79F1 C7E8E893 F08BE954
E0184F0D 0E0112BD 497C87E8 5E4788C4 ACF56F92 9134B85B 7D08F6BA 703CF11B
BC8E1377 DC0450E0 A9939952 90F1D84F F235BB5B D54517E9 B636D334 5569278A
3A629DC7 03CC08FF F067EE3F 0EADFAC0 A03C650C A2253E4C 13DD8910 E9726929
9ACD8403 CD16D710 6D5F1FA5 F7F0E310 9060340C 3309446B 99DC10E2 25908D03
D3FBA3E3 54D70203 010001A3 53305130 0F060355 1D130101 FF040530 030101FF
301F0603 551D2304 18301680 14C73ACD 622756FB EB532701 66D605BC 49F9FFF2
BE301D06 03551D0E 04160414 C73ACD62 2756FBEB 53270166 D605BC49 F9FFF2BE
300D0609 2A864886 F70D0101 05050003 82010100 DC4AC08A D11E0E05 239FEBCE
694CC50F E0712807 A52F5714 C1501C4A A8283929 23F00BD1 B6F5310E 917C7501
B585E8AE 4CC88BE4 ED5555BF F46F2917 621577D6 6E14E796 B9A24FC7 3191F259
D61C6718 05E2FCB6 443E5D34 CBB90C02 3066F77C 3E3361E0 F975FB8E C026F652
DF2F3B2F FBBF0ABF 6600FD3D 9DB94163 330239C0 3F948CB1 30CEA1EE 3730FDA1
83A37AD9 940D8240 3B5A6D11 2601E91B 401CAB81 7FCC7C6E F3C48F19 B225FBCE
02523D36 8EAA3D42 3C232231 138F8EB0 BD3FF413 5FB879BE 5511A0D2 5953DB50
06E5CC26 082013B8 39D83819 EAA03533 B242A46C 679BE60F 0D9ED9BD 20D03F09
71159FAC 4DFD2DA8 71C5A1DD 94397BA5 6D2CEB0B
quit
!
!
no license feature hseck9
license udi pid IR8140H-P-K9 sn FDO2438J7BK
memory free low-watermark processor 47507
!
diagnostic bootstrap level minimal
!
spanning-tree extend system-id
dot1x system-auth-control
!
username cisc0 password 0 cisc0
!
redundancy
mode none
!
!
interface Loopback1
no ip address
ipv6 address 4008::8/128
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
ip address 10.79.56.221 255.255.255.0
negotiation auto
ipv6 address 2060:FACD::221/64
ipv6 enable
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
ip address 192.168.254.101 255.255.255.0
load-interval 30
negotiation auto
ipv6 address 2111:ABCD::111/64
ipv6 enable
ipv6 nd ra suppress
ipv6 ospf 1 area 0
!
interface WPAN0/1/0
no ip address
wisun-mode
ieee154 beacon-async min-interval 15 max-interval 60 suppression-coefficient 1

```

Example of IR8100 configuration settings for CR-Mesh

```

ieee154 dwell window 12400 max-dwell 400
ieee154 notch 10-20
ieee154 panid 15294
ieee154 ssid regression
ieee154 beacon-ver-incr-time 0
rpl dag-lifetime 60
rpl dio-dbl 1
rpl dio-min 14
rpl version-incr-time 10
ipv6 address 2001:CABB::1/64
ipv6 enable
ipv6 mld join-group FF38:40:2001:CABB::1
ipv6 dhcp server dhcp-node rapid-commit
authentication host-mode multi-auth
authentication port-control auto
dot1x pae authenticator
!
no ip http server
ip http auth-retry 3 time-window 1
ip http authentication local
ip http secure-server
ip forward-protocol nd
ip tftp blocksize 8192
ip route 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 10.79.56.254
ip route 10.79.0.0 255.255.0.0 10.79.56.254
!
!
ipv6 route 2001:DB8:6:D6FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 2001:DB8:7:D7FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 2015:ABCD::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 3001:DB8:7:D7FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 3002:DB8:7:D7FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 3002:ABCD::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 9001:DB8:7:D7FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 route 9002:DB8:7:D7FF::/64 2111:ABCD::200
ipv6 router ospf 1
redistribute rpl
!

tftp-server bootflash:cg-mesh-bridge-6.4weekly-6404-ir510-8546385.bin
!
!
radius server wisun_radius
address ipv4 10.79.42.79 auth-port 1812 acct-port 1813
key Wi-SUN_radius
!
!
control-plane
!
!
line con 0
exec-timeout 0 0
transport preferred none
stopbits 1
speed 115200
line vty 0 4
exec-timeout 0 0
password cisc0
transport input telnet
line vty 5 15
exec-timeout 0 0
password cisc0
transport input telnet
!

```

```

call-home
! If contact email address in call-home is configured as sch-smart-licensing@cisco.com
! the email address configured in Cisco Smart License Portal will be used as contact email
  address to send SCH notifications.
contact-email-addr sch-smart-licensing@cisco.com
profile "CiscoTAC-1"
active
destination transport-method http
ntp server 171.68.38.66
ntp server 10.64.58.51
!
end

```

ASR configuration example for CR-Mesh

The following example shows the configuration for an ASR in a Cisco Resilient Mesh network.

```

SOL-ASR-7# show run brief
Building configuration...
Current configuration : 5512 bytes
!
! Last configuration change at 10:38:26 PST Fri May 16 2014 by admin
! NVRAM config last updated at 13:44:36 PST Thu May 15 2014 by admin
!
version 15.4
service timestamps debug datetime msec
service timestamps log datetime localtime
no platform punt-keepalive disable-kernel-core
!
hostname SOL-ASR-7
!
boot-start-marker
boot system flash:asr1000rpl-adventerprisek9.03.11.00.S.154-1.S-std.bin
boot-end-marker
!
aqm-register-fnf
!
vrf definition Mgmt-intf
!
  address-family ipv4
  exit-address-family
!
  address-family ipv6
  exit-address-family
!
no logging console
!
aaa new-model
!
!
aaa authentication login default local
aaa authorization exec default local
aaa authorization network FlexVPN_Author local
!
!
!
!
aaa session-id common
clock timezone PST -8 0
!
!

```

Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Router Software Configuration Guide

```
!  
crypto ikev2 redirect gateway init  
crypto ikev2 proposal FlexVPN_IKEv2_Proposal  
  encryption aes-cbc-128  
  integrity sha1  
  group 5  
!  
crypto ikev2 policy FLeXVPN_IKEv2_Policy  
  proposal FlexVPN_IKEv2_Proposal  
!  
!  
crypto ikev2 profile FlexVPN_IKEv2_Profile  
  match certificate FlexVPN_Cert_Map  
  identity local dn  
  authentication remote rsa-sig  
  authentication local rsa-sig  
  pki trustpoint LDevID  
  aaa authorization group cert list FlexVPN_Author FlexVPN_Author_Policy  
  virtual-template 1  
!  
!  
crypto ikev2 cluster  
  port 2000  
  standby-group group1  
  slave priority 90  
  slave max-session 10  
  no shutdown  
!  
!  
cdp run  
!  
ip tftp source-interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3  
ip ssh version 2  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
crypto ipsec transform-set AES_128_SHA1 esp-aes esp-sha-hmac  
  mode transport  
!  
crypto ipsec profile FlexVPN_IPsec_Profile  
  set transform-set AES_128_SHA1  
  set ikev2-profile FlexVPN_IKEv2_Profile  
  responder-only  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
!  
interface Loopback0  
  ip address 20.0.0.3 255.255.0.0  
  ipv6 address 2003:20::1/128  
  ipv6 address 2333::1/64  
  ipv6 enable  
  ipv6 ospf 1 area 1  
!  
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0
```

```

ip address 173.36.248.224 255.255.255.192
negotiation auto
cdp enable
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/1
ip address 10.0.2.70 255.255.255.0
ip pim sparse-mode
negotiation auto
ipv6 address 2001:A02::A00:246/64
ipv6 enable
ipv6 ospf 1 area 1
ipv6 ospf mtu-ignore
cdp enable
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/2
ip address 11.0.0.70 255.255.255.0
standby 1 ip 11.0.0.100
standby 1 priority 110
standby 1 name group1
negotiation auto
ipv6 enable
cdp enable
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/3
ip address 11.0.1.70 255.255.255.0
negotiation auto
cdp enable
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/0
description WIMAX-BASESTATION
ip address 192.10.0.88 255.255.255.0
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/1
no ip address
ip pim sparse-mode
negotiation auto
ipv6 address 2010:DEAD:BEEF:CAFE::1/64
ipv6 enable
ipv6 ospf 1 area 1
ipv6 ospf mtu-ignore
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/2
no ip address
ip pim sparse-mode
negotiation auto
ipv6 address 2011:DEAD:BEEF:CAFE::1/64
ipv6 enable
ipv6 ospf 1 area 1
ipv6 ospf mtu-ignore
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/3
no ip address
shutdown
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/1/4
no ip address
shutdown
negotiation auto
!
interface GigabitEthernet0
vrf forwarding Mgmt-intf
no ip address

```

Cisco Catalyst IR8140 Heavy Duty Series Router Software Configuration Guide

```

transport input all
transport output all
!
ntp server 192.168.100.250
netconf max-sessions 16
netconf ssh
!
end
SOL-ASR-7#

```

Check and upgrade the WPAN firmware version

For the IR8100, only the IRMH WPAN is supported, and the minimum required version is 6.2.19.



Note WPAN firmware is not integrated into the IR8100 system firmware and must be upgraded separately.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware hwversion** command to check the version of the WPAN hardware in slot 1.

Example:

```

Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware hwversion
hardware version: CGM-WPAN, 1.0, IRMH-WPAN/1.0/2.0

```

- Step 2** Use the **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version** command to check the installed CR-Mesh firmware version of the WPAN.

Example:

```

Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version
firmware version: 6.2RC(6.2.20), cg-mesh-bridge, origin/master-6.2, 6dd02f0, Jul 22 2020

```

You can also display the WPAN firmware version using the **show wpan 0/1/0 config** command:

```

Router# show wpan 0/1/0 config
module type:      RF-WPAN (IEEE 802.15.4e/g RF 900MHz)
.
.
.
firmware version:      6.2RC(6.2.20)

```

Upgrade WPAN firmware

Before you begin

The appropriate WPAN firmware image must be copied and available on the IR8100 flash in the root directory.

Follow these steps to upgrade the WPAN firmware:

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **install-firmware image** command to install the firmware.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# install-firmware image
Firmware upgrade starting. This may take several minutes. Please do not interrupt.
.....
Installed the WPAN 6.0 firmware successfully (94 sec).
Please reload the WPAN module in slot 1!!
```

Step 2 Use the **hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered** command to power down the WPAN module.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered
```

Step 3 Wait for power-down messages, wait 60–90 seconds, and then use the **no hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered** command to power up the module.

Example:

```
Router(config)# no hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered
```

Step 4 Wait for power-up messages and wait at least 500 seconds before proceeding. Verify the status and hardware version using the **show ip interface brief** and **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version** commands.

Example:

```
Router# show ip interface brief | inc Wpan
Wpan0/10                unassigned      YES unset   up
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version
firmware version: 6.2RC(6.2.20), cg-mesh-bridge, origin/master-6.2, 6dd02f0, Jul 22 2020
```

Upgrade WPAN firmware (CG-Mesh to WiSUN)

Before you begin

The appropriate WPAN firmware image must be copied and available in the root directory of the IR8100 flash.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **install-firmware image** command to install the firmware.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# install-firmware image
Firmware upgrade starting. This may take several minutes. Please do not interrupt.
.....
Installed the WPAN 6.0 firmware successfully (94 sec).
Please reload the WPAN module in slot 1!!
```

Step 2 Use the **hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered** command to power down the WPAN module.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered
```

Step 3 Wait for power-down messages, wait 60–90 seconds, and then use the **no hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered** command to power up the module.

Example:

```
Router(config)# no hw-module subslot 0/1 shutdown unpowered
```

Step 4 Wait for power-up messages and wait at least 500 seconds before proceeding. Verify the status and hardware version using the **show ip interface brief** and **show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version** commands.

Example:

```
Router# show ip interface brief | inc Wpan
Wpan0/10          unassigned      YES unset  up
Router# show wpan 0/1/0 hardware version
firmware version: 6.2RC(6.2.20), cg-mesh-bridge, origin/master-6.2, 6dd02f0, Jul 22 2020
```



System messages

This section provides details on system messages to facilitate effective monitoring and maintenance of the system.

- [System messages, on page 143](#)

System messages

This section provides details on system messages to facilitate effective monitoring and maintenance of the system.

Information about process management

Process management is the infrastructure for starting and monitoring software on a router.

- It is platform independent.
- It provides consistent error messages across platforms running on Cisco IOS XE.

Remote monitoring and system messages

You can access system messages by logging in to the console through Telnet protocol and monitoring your system components remotely from any workstation that supports the Telnet protocol. While direct involvement in process management is not required, reviewing system messages regarding process failures and other issues is recommended.

How to Find Error Message Details

Provides guidance on using the Error Message Decoder tool to resolve system errors by entering specific message strings to retrieve detailed explanations and recommended troubleshooting steps.

To show further details about a process management or a syslog error message, enter the error message into the Error Message Decoder tool at: <https://www.cisco.com/cgi-bin/Support/Errordecoder/index.cgi>.

For example, enter the message `%PMAN-0-PROCESS_NOTIFICATION` into the tool to view an explanation of the error message and the recommended action to be taken.

Table 16: Error Message: %PMAN-0-PROCESS_NOTIFICATION

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process lifecycle notification component failed, preventing proper detection of a process start and stop. This problem is likely the result of a software defect in the software subpackage.	Note the time of the message and investigate the kernel error message logs to learn more about the problem and see if it is correctable. If the problem cannot be corrected or the logs are not helpful, copy the error message exactly as it appears on the console along with the output of the show tech-support command and provide the gathered information to a Cisco technical support representative.

Table 17: Error Message: %PMAN-0-PROCFAILCRIT

Explanation	Recommended Action
A process important to the functioning of the router has failed.	Note the time of the message and investigate the error message logs to learn more about the problem. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: http://www.cisco.com/tac . Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: https://bst.cloudapps.cisco.com/bugsearch . If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/ , or contact your Cisco technical support representative. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.

Table 18: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCFAILOPT

Explanation	Recommended Action
A process that does not affect the forwarding of traffic has failed.	Note the time of the message and investigate the kernel error message logs to learn more about the problem. Although traffic will still be forwarded after receiving this message, certain functions on the router may be disabled because of this message and the error should be investigated. If the logs are not helpful or indicate a problem you cannot correct, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at http://www.cisco.com/tac . Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: https://bst.cloudapps.cisco.com/bugsearch . If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/ , or contact your Cisco technical support representative. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.

Table 19: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCFAIL

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process has failed as the result of an error.	This message will appear with other messages related to the process. Check the other messages to determine the reason for the failures and see if corrective action can be taken. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: http://www.cisco.com/tac . Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: https://bst.cloudapps.cisco.com/bugsearch . If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/ , or contact your Cisco technical support representative. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.

Table 20: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCFAIL_IGNORE

Explanation	Recommended Action
A process failure is being ignored due to the user-configured debug settings.	If this behavior is desired and the debug settings are set according to a user's preference, no action is needed. If the appearance of this message is viewed as a problem, change the debug settings. The router is not expected to behave normally with this debug setting. Functionalities such as SSO switchover, router reloads, FRU resets, and so on will be affected. This setting should only be used in a debug scenario.

Table 21: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROCHOLDDOWN

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process was restarted too many times with repeated failures and has been placed in the hold-down state.	This message will appear with other messages related to the process. Check the other messages to determine the reason for the failures and see if corrective action can be taken. If the problem persists, copy the message exactly as it appears on the console or in the system log. Research and attempt to resolve the issue using the tools and utilities provided at: http://www.cisco.com/tac . Search for resolved software issues using the Bug Search Tool at: https://bst.cloudapps.cisco.com/bugsearch . If you still require assistance, open a case with the Technical Assistance Center at: http://tools.cisco.com/ServiceRequestTool/create/ , or contact your Cisco technical support representative. Attach the following information to your case in nonzipped, plain-text (.txt) format: the output of the show logging and show tech-support commands and your pertinent troubleshooting logs.

Table 22: Error Message: %PMAN-3-RELOAD_RP_SB_NOT_READY

Explanation	Recommended Action
The route processor is being reloaded because there is no ready standby instance.	Ensure that the reload is not due to an error condition.

Table 23: Error Message: %PMAN-3-RELOAD_RP

Explanation	Recommended Action
The RP is being reloaded.	Ensure that the reload is not due to an error condition. If it is due to an error condition, collect information requested by the other log messages.

Table 24: Error Message: %PMAN-3-RELOAD_SYSTEM

Explanation	Recommended Action
The system is being reloaded.	Ensure that the reload is not due to an error condition. If it is due to an error condition, collect information requested by the other log messages.

Table 25: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROC_BAD_EXECUTABLE

Explanation	Recommended Action
The executable file used for the process is bad or has permission problem.	Ensure that the named executable is replaced with the correct executable.

Table 26: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROC_BAD_COMMAND

Explanation	Recommended Action
The executable file used for the process is missing, or a dependent library is bad.	Ensure that the named executable is present and the dependent libraries are good.

Table 27: Error Message: %PMAN-3-PROC_EMPTY_EXEC_FILE

Explanation	Recommended Action
The executable file used for the process is empty.	Ensure that the named executable is non-zero in size.

Table 28: Error Message: %PMAN-5-EXITACTION

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process manager is exiting.	Ensure that the process manager is not exiting due to an error condition. If it is due to an error condition, collect information requested by the other log messages.

Table 29: Error Message: %PMAN-6-PROCSHUT

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process has gracefully shut down.	No user action is necessary. This message is provided for informational purposes only.

Table 30: Error Message: %PMAN-6-PROCSTART

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process has launched and is operating properly.	No user action is necessary. This message is provided for informational purposes only.

Table 31: Error Message: %PMAN-6-PROCSTATELESS

Explanation	Recommended Action
The process has requested a stateless restart.	No user action is necessary. This message is provided for informational purposes only.



CHAPTER 18

Environmental monitoring

Provides information about environmental monitoring sections and capabilities.

- [Environmental monitoring, on page 149](#)

Environmental monitoring

Provides information about environmental monitoring sections and capabilities.

Environmental monitoring

Environmental monitoring is a router system that monitors environmental conditions and responds to abnormal events.

- monitors temperature of CPUs and motherboard
- records abnormal events and generates notifications
- monitors Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps
- generates and collects Onboard Failure Logging (OBFL) data
- sends call home event notifications
- logs system error messages, and
- displays present settings and status.

Environmental monitoring and reporting functions

Environmental monitoring and reporting functions are system capabilities that allow you to maintain normal system operation by identifying and resolving adverse conditions prior to loss of operation.

Function types

The environmental monitoring and reporting functions include:

- [Environmental monitoring functions, on page 150](#)
- [Environmental Reporting Functions, on page 151](#)

Environmental monitoring functions

Environmental monitoring functions use sensors to monitor the temperature of the cooling air as it moves through the chassis.

Environmental operating conditions

The router is expected to meet the following environmental operating conditions

- Non-operating Temperature: -40°F to 158°F (-40°C to 70°C)
- Non-operating Humidity: 5 to 95% relative humidity (non-condensing)
- Operating Temperature:
 - 40° to 140°F (-40° to 60°C) in a sealed NEMA cabinet with no airflow
 - 40° to 158°F (-40° to 70°C) in a vented cabinet with 40 lfm of air
 - 40° to 167°F (-40° to 75°C) in a forced air enclosure with 200 lfm of air
- Operating Humidity: 10% to 95% relative humidity (non-condensing)
- Operating Altitude: -500 to 5,000 feet. Derate max operating temperature 1.5°C per 1000 feet.

Status condition levels

The following table displays the levels of status conditions used by the environmental monitoring system.

Table 32: Levels of Status Conditions Used by the Environmental Monitoring System

Status Level	Description
Normal	All monitored parameters are within normal tolerance.
Warning	The system has exceeded a specified threshold. The system continues to operate, but operator action is recommended to bring the system back to a normal state.
Critical	An out-of-tolerance temperature or voltage condition exists. Although the system continues to operate, it is approaching shutdown. Immediate operator action is required.

Temperature and voltage exceed max or min thresholds

The environmental monitoring system sends system messages to the console, for example, when the conditions described here are met:

The following example shows the warning messages indicating the maximum and minimum thresholds of the temperature or voltage:

```
Warnings :
-----
For all the temperature sensors (name starting with "Temp:") above,
the critical warning threshold is 100C (100C and higher)
the warning threshold is 80C (range from 80C to 99C)
the low warning threshold is 1C (range from -inf to 1C).
```

For all voltage sensors (names starting with "V:"),
 the high warning threshold starts at that voltage +10%. (voltage + 10% is warning)
 the low warning threshold starts at the voltage -10%. (voltage - 10% is warning)

Environmental Reporting Functions

Provides a list of commands to monitor and report environmental status for the router.

The following commands are available to retrieve and display environmental status reports:

- **show diag all eeprom**
- **show environment**
- **show environment all**
- **show inventory**
- **show platform** and **show platform diag**
- **show platform software status control-processor**
- **show diag slot R0 eeprom detail**
- **show version** and **show power**
-

```
Router# show diag all eeprom
MIDPLANE EEPROM data:
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-P-K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24370MFT
Top Assy. Revision : 15
Hardware Revision : 0.1
Asset ID : P2
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
External PoE Module POE0 EEPROM data is not initialized
Internal PoE is not present
Slot R0 EEPROM data:
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-P-K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24370MFT
Top Assy. Revision : 15
Hardware Revision : 0.1
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
Slot F0 EEPROM data:
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-P-K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24370MFT
Top Assy. Revision : 15
Hardware Revision : 0.1
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
Slot 0 EEPROM data:
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-P-K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24370MFT
Top Assy. Revision : 15
Hardware Revision : 0.1
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
Slot 1 EEPROM data is not initialized
Slot 2 EEPROM data is not initialized
Slot 3 contains a BBU Unit.
```

```

Please use 'show platform hardware battery sprom [details]' to get EEPROM data.
Slot 4 contains a BBU Unit.
Please use 'show platform hardware battery sprom [details]' to get EEPROM data.
Slot 5 contains a BBU Unit.
Please use 'show platform hardware battery sprom [details]' to get EEPROM data.
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/0:
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-2x1GE
Version Identifier (VID) : V01
PCB Serial Number :
Top Assy. Part Number : 68-2236-01
Top Assy. Revision : A0
Hardware Revision : 2.2
CLEI Code : CNUIAHSAAA
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/1:
Product Identifier (PID) : IRMH-WPAN-NA
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24350D18
Top Assy. Revision : 07
Hardware Revision : 2.0
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/2:
Product Identifier (PID) : IRMH-LTEAP18-GL
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24360MVH
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code : N/A
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/3:
Product Identifier (PID) : IRMH-LTEA-EA
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
PCB Serial Number : FDO24360MU4
Hardware Revision : 1.0
CLEI Code :
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 0/6 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 1/6 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 2/6 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 3/6 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/0 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 4/6 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/0 is not available

```

```

SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/1 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/2 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/3 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/4 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/5 is not available
SPA EEPROM data for subslot 5/6 is not available
Router#

Router# show environment
Number of Critical alarms: 0
Number of Major alarms: 0
Number of Minor alarms: 0
Slot Sensor Current State Reading Threshold(Minor,Major,Critical,Shutdown)
-----
R0 Temp: LM75BXXX Normal 39 Celsius (80 ,85 ,90 ,na )(Celsius)
Router#

Router# show environment all
Sensor List: Environmental Monitoring
Sensor Location State Reading
Temp: LM75BXXX R0 Normal 48 Celsius

Router# show inventory
+++++
INFO: Please use "show license UDI" to get serial number for licensing.
+++++
NAME: "Chassis", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H Heavy Duty Series Router with PoE"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: V00 , SN: FDO2441J91D
NAME: "Power Supply Module 0", DESCR: "60W AC Power Supply module"
PID: IRMH-PWR60W-AC , VID: V01 , SN: LIT22503LDK
NAME: "module 0", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H-P-K9 Fixed and pluggable Interface Module
controller"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: , SN:
NAME: "NIM subslot 0/1", DESCR: "IRMH-WPAN-NA Module"
PID: IRMH-WPAN-NA , VID: V00 , SN: FDO24350D18
NAME: "NIM subslot 0/2", DESCR: "IRMH-LTEAP18-GL Module"
PID: IRMH-LTEAP18-GL , VID: V00 , SN: FDO24360MVH
NAME: "Modem on Cellular0/2/0", DESCR: "Telit LM960"
PID: LM960 , VID: 1.0 , SN: 358347100029266
NAME: "PIM subslot 0/2", DESCR: "P-LTEAP18-GL Module"
PID: P-LTEAP18-GL , VID: V01 , SN: FOC242100XW
NAME: "NIM subslot 0/3", DESCR: "IRMH-LTEA-EA Module"
PID: IRMH-LTEA-EA , VID: V00 , SN: FDO24360MU4
NAME: "Modem on Cellular0/3/0", DESCR: "Sierra Wireless EM7455"
PID: EM7455 , VID: 1.0 , SN: 356129072307959
NAME: "PIM subslot 0/3", DESCR: "P-LTEA-EA Module"
PID: P-LTEA-EA , VID: V02 , SN: FOC24290CZ2
NAME: "NIM subslot 0/0", DESCR: "Front Panel 2 port Gigabitethernet Module"
PID: IR8140H-2x1GE , VID: V01 , SN:
NAME: "subslot 0/0 transceiver 1", DESCR: "GE T"
PID: GLC-TE , VID: V03 , SN: AVC24140C5S
NAME: "module 1", DESCR: "Supervisor Module with 1 Copper + 1 Fiber Port for IR8140"
PID: IRMH-SUP-SP , VID: , SN:
NAME: "module 3", DESCR: "Stackable Battery Backup unit for IR8140"
PID: CGR-BATT-4AH , VID: V03 , SN: NVT24231754
NAME: "module 4", DESCR: "Stackable Battery Backup unit for IR8140"
PID: CGR-BATT-4AH , VID: V03 , SN: NVT24233031
NAME: "module 5", DESCR: "Stackable Battery Backup unit for IR8140"
PID: CGR-BATT-4AH , VID: V03 , SN: NVT24232260
NAME: "module R0", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H-P-K9 Route Processor"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: V00 , SN: FDO24370MFT
NAME: "module F0", DESCR: "Cisco Catalyst IR8140H-P-K9 Forwarding Processor"
PID: IR8140H-P-K9 , VID: , SN:

Router# show platform
Chassis type: IR8140H-P-K9

```

```

Slot Type State Insert time (ago)
-----
0 IR8140H-P-K9 ok 01:35:07
0/0 IR8140H-2x1GE ok 01:33:56
0/1 IRMH-WPAN-NA ok 01:33:55
0/2 IRMH-LTEAP18-GL ok 01:33:55
0/3 IRMH-LTEA-EA ok 01:33:55
1 IRMH-SUP-SP ok 01:35:07
R0 IR8140H-P-K9 ok, active 01:35:07
F0 IR8140H-P-K9 ok, active 01:35:07
P0 IRMH-PWR60W-AC ok 01:34:29
Router#

Router# show platform diag
Chassis type: IR8140H-P-K9
Slot: 0, IR8140H-P-K9
Running state : ok
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:00:42 (01:35:35 ago)
Software declared up time : 00:01:31 (01:34:46 ago)
CPLD version :
Firmware version : 1.4(DEV) [root-vganev 100]
Sub-slot: 0/0, IR8140H-2x1GE
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:53 (01:34:23 ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:01:53 (01:34:23 ago)
Sub-slot: 0/1, IRMH-WPAN-NA
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:23 ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:23 ago)
Sub-slot: 0/2, IRMH-LTEAP18-GL
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:23 ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:23 ago)
Sub-slot: 0/3, IRMH-LTEA-EA
Operational status : ok
Internal state : inserted
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:22 ago)
Logical insert detect time : 00:01:54 (01:34:22 ago)
Slot: 1, IRMH-SUP-SP
Running state : ok
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:00:42 (01:35:35 ago)
Software declared up time : 00:00:00 (never ago)
CPLD version : N/A
Firmware version : N/A
Slot: R0, IR8140H-P-K9
Running state : ok, active
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:00:42 (01:35:35 ago)
Software declared up time : 00:00:42 (01:35:35 ago)
CPLD version : 00000000
Firmware version : 1.4(DEV) [root-vganev 100]
Slot: F0, IR8140H-P-K9
Running state : ok, active
Internal state : online
Internal operational state : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:00:42 (01:35:35 ago)
Software declared up time : 00:01:32 (01:34:44 ago)

```

```
Hardware ready signal time : 00:00:00 (never ago)
Packet ready signal time : 00:01:38 (01:34:38 ago)
CPLD version : 00000000
Firmware version : 1.4(DEV) [root-vganev 100]
Slot: P0, IRMH-PWR60W-AC
State : ok
Physical insert detect time : 00:01:20 (01:34:57 ago)
Slot: GE-POE, Unknown
State : NA
Physical insert detect time : 00:00:00 (never ago)
Router#

Router# show platform software status control-processor
RP0: online, statistics updated 1 seconds ago
Load Average: healthy
1-Min: 1.04, status: healthy, under 5.00
5-Min: 0.94, status: healthy, under 5.00
15-Min: 0.96, status: healthy, under 5.00
Memory (kb): healthy
Total: 8116912
Used: 3315056 (41%), status: healthy
Free: 4801856 (59%)
Committed: 3109960 (38%), under 90%
Per-core Statistics
CPU0: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 1.25, System: 2.51, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 92.99
IRQ: 2.71, SIRQ: 0.52, IOWait: 0.00
CPU1: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 4.34, System: 3.43, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 92.21
IRQ: 0.00, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00
CPU2: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 4.02, System: 2.31, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 93.25
IRQ: 0.40, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00
CPU3: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 23.50, System: 39.40, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 28.69
IRQ: 8.38, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00
Router#

Router# show diag slot R0 eeprom detail
Slot R0 EEPROM data:
EEPROM version : 4
Compatible Type : 0xFF
Hardware Revision : 0.1
PCB Part Number : 73-104919-02
Board Revision : 03
Deviation Number : 0
Fab Version : 02
PCB Serial Number : FDO24370MFT
Top Assy. Part Number : 68-102792-02
Top Assy. Revision : 15
Chassis Serial Number : FDO2441J91D
Product Identifier (PID) : IR8140H-P-K9
Version Identifier (VID) : V00
CLEI Code : UNASSIGNED
RMA Test History : 00
RMA Number : 0-0-0-0
RMA History : 00
Asset ID : P2
Asset Alias : 20530
Power Consumption : 60000 mWatts (Maximum)
Power Consumption Mode 1 : 499260 mWatts
Power Consumption Mode 2 : 635950 mWatts
Power Consumption Mode 3 : 556720 mWatts
Chassis MAC Address : f86b.d978.8320
MAC Address block size : 16
```

```

Controller Type : 4396
Asset ID :
Router#

Router# show version
Cisco IOS XE Software, Version BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148
Cisco IOS Software [Bengaluru], ISR Software (ARMV8EL_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9_IOT-M),
Experimental Version 17.5.20210124:064309
[S2C-build-v175_throttle-507-/nobackup/mcpre/BLD-BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209
226]
Copyright (c) 1986-2021 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Sun 24-Jan-21 06:10 by mcpre
Cisco IOS-XE software, Copyright (c) 2005-2021 by cisco Systems, Inc.
All rights reserved. Certain components of Cisco IOS-XE software are
licensed under the GNU General Public License ("GPL") Version 2.0. The
software code licensed under GPL Version 2.0 is free software that comes
with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY. You can redistribute and/or modify such
GPL code under the terms of GPL Version 2.0. For more details, see the
documentation or "License Notice" file accompanying the IOS-XE software,
or the applicable URL provided on the flyer accompanying the IOS-XE
software.
ROM: 1.4(REL)
CABO_SIT_Cellular uptime is 1 hour, 37 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 1 hour, 38 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is
"bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148.SSA.bin"
Last reload reason: Reload Command
This product contains cryptographic features and is subject to United
States and local country laws governing import, export, transfer and
use. Delivery of Cisco cryptographic products does not imply
third-party authority to import, export, distribute or use encryption.
Importers, exporters, distributors and users are responsible for
compliance with U.S. and local country laws. By using this product you
agree to comply with applicable laws and regulations. If you are unable
to comply with U.S. and local laws, return this product immediately.
A summary of U.S. laws governing Cisco cryptographic products may be found at:
http://www.cisco.com/wwl/export/crypto/tool/stqrg.html
If you require further assistance please contact us by sending email to
export@cisco.com.
Technology Package License Information:
-----
Technology Type Technology-package Technology-package
Current Next Reboot
-----
Smart License Perpetual network-advantage network-advantage
Smart License Subscription None None
The current throughput level is 50000 kbps
Smart Licensing Status: Registration Not Applicable/Not Applicable
cisco IR8140H-P-K9 (1RU) processor with 1948753K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FDO2441J91D
Router operating mode: Autonomous
2 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
4 Cellular interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
8116912K bytes of physical memory.
8032254K bytes of Bootflash at bootflash:.
Configuration register is 0x2102
Router#

Router# show power
Main PSU :
Total Power Consumed: 22.92 Watts
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A

```



```
PowerSupplySource : External PS
POE Module :
Configured Mode : N/A
Current runtime state same : N/A
Total power available : 15.4 Watts
Router#
```

Additional references

This topic provides references to MIBs associated with the power efficiency management feature.

MIBs

MIBs	MIBs Link
CISCO-ENTITY-FRU-CONTROL-MIB	To locate and download MIBs for selected platforms, Cisco IOS releases, and feature sets, use the Cisco MIB Locator at: http://www.cisco.com/go/mibs .

Technical assistance

This reference provides information on accessing the Cisco Support website for technical documentation, troubleshooting tools, and subscription services for product alerts.

Description	Link
The Cisco Support website provides extensive online resources, including documentation and tools for troubleshooting and resolving technical issues with Cisco products and technologies. To receive security and technical information about your products, you can subscribe to various services, such as the Product Alert Tool (accessed from Field Notices), the Cisco Technical Services Newsletter, and Really Simple Syndication (RSS) Feeds. Access to most tools on the Cisco Support website requires a Cisco.com user ID and password.	http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/support/index.html



CHAPTER 19

IOx application hosting

Provides an overview of the IOx application hosting architecture and its integration with network infrastructure.

- [Application hosting, on page 159](#)

Application hosting

Application hosting is a software as a service solution that:

- enables hosted applications to run remotely using commands
- gives administrators a platform for leveraging their own tools and utilities, and
- provides software as a service capabilities for remote application execution.

Application hosting

Application hosting is a network capability that enables third-party applications to run directly on network infrastructure devices.

Application hosting

Application hosting is a platform capability that:

- enables administrators to leverage their own tools and utilities on network devices
- provides reusable, portable, and scalable applications for virtual environments, and
- supports third-party off-the-shelf applications built using Linux tool chains.

Application hosting capabilities

Applications hosted on network devices serve various purposes:

- Automation
- Configuration management monitoring
- Integration with existing tool chains

Cisco devices support custom applications cross-compiled with the software development kit that Cisco provides.

IOx framework

IOx is a Cisco-developed end-to-end application framework that:

- provides application hosting capabilities for different application types on Cisco network platforms
- uses a different architecture for the IR8100 compared to other Cisco platforms that use the hypervisor approach, and
- runs as a process on the IR8100 rather than as a virtual machine like on other platforms.

Cisco application hosting

Cisco application hosting is a virtualization service that:

- launches designated applications in containers
- checks available resources (memory, CPU, and storage), and allocates and manages them
- provides an application hosting infrastructure referred to as Cisco Application Framework (CAF), and
- helps in the setup of platform-specific networking (packet-path) via VirtualPortGroup and management interfaces.

Application hosting services

Application hosting provides the following services:

- Provides support for console logging
- Provides access to services via REST APIs
- Provides a CLI endpoint

The IR8100 allows you to deploy applications using the application hosting CLI commands. You can also deploy applications using the Local Manager and Fog Director.

The container is referred to as the virtualization environment provided to run the guest application on the host operating system. The Cisco IOS-XE virtualization services provide manageability and networking models for running guest applications. The virtualization infrastructure allows the administrator to define a logical interface that specifies the connectivity between the host and the guest. IOx maps the logical interface into the Virtual Network Interface Card (vNIC) that the guest application uses.

Applications to be deployed in the containers are packaged as TAR files. The configuration that is specific to these applications is also packaged as part of the TAR file.

The management interface on the device connects the application hosting network to the IOS management interface. The Layer 3 interface of the application receives the Layer 2 bridged traffic from the IOS management interface. The management interface connects through the management bridge to the container/application interface. The IP address of the application must be on the same subnet as the management interface IP address.

IOXMAN

IOXMAN is a process that:

- establishes a tracing infrastructure to provide logging or tracing services for guest applications, except Libvirt, that emulates serial devices
- operates based on the lifecycle of the guest application to enable and disable the tracing service
- sends logging data to IOS syslog, saves tracing data to IOx tracelog, and maintains IOx tracelog for each guest application.

Application hosting on the IR8100 industrial integrated services router

Application hosting on the IR8100 industrial integrated services router is a network service capability that:

- requires applications to comply with ARM 64-bits architecture due to the non-x86 CPU design
- supports deployment through CLI commands, Local Manager WebUI, and Fog Director management platforms, and
- requires Virtual Port Group interface configuration before installing or activating IOx applications from Local Manager.

Deployment methods and requirements



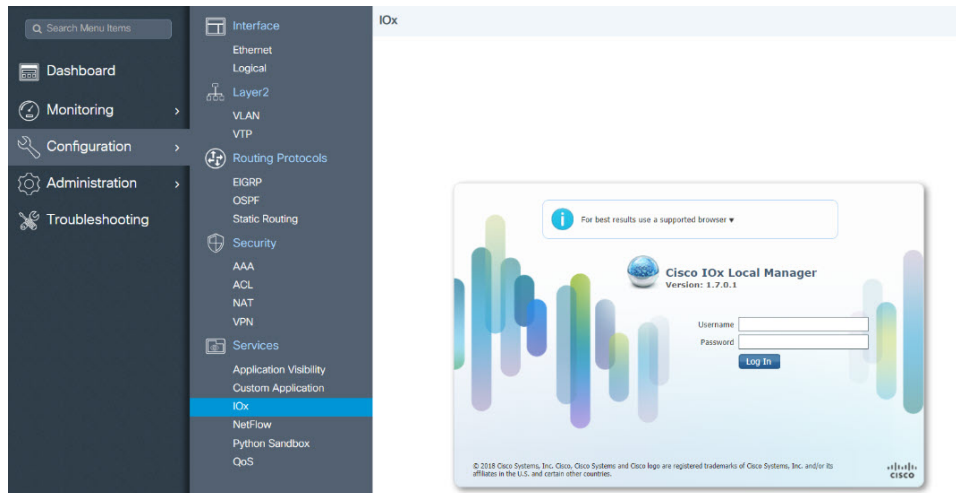
Note

- The IR8100 CPU is not based on x86 architecture like other routers. Therefore, this requires the application to comply with the ARM 64-bits architecture.
 - Before installing or activating an IOx application from Local Manager, you need to configure the required Virtual Port Group interfaces.
-

Application hosting can be achieved using the application hosting CLI commands as well as using Local Manager and Fog Director. Application hosting using Local Manager is done through WebUI. To deploy the applications using Local Manager, enable WebUI and then log in to Local Manager.

Application Management is available using FND.

Figure 3: Local Manager



1. From WebUI, click on **Configuration > Services > IOx**
2. Log in using the username and password configured.
3. Follow the steps for the application lifecycle in the **Cisco IOx Local Manager Reference Guide** using this link: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/routers/access/800/software/guides/iox/lm/reference-guide/1-7/b_iox_lm_ref_guide_1_7/b_iox_lm_ref_guide_1_7_chapter_011.html

The next section explains the deployment of an application using the application hosting CLI commands.

VirtualPortGroup

A VirtualPortGroup is a software construct on Cisco IOS that:

- maps to a Linux bridge IP address
- represents the switch virtual interface (SVI) of the Linux container, and
- connects the application hosting network to the IOS routing domain.

VirtualPortGroup configuration and connectivity

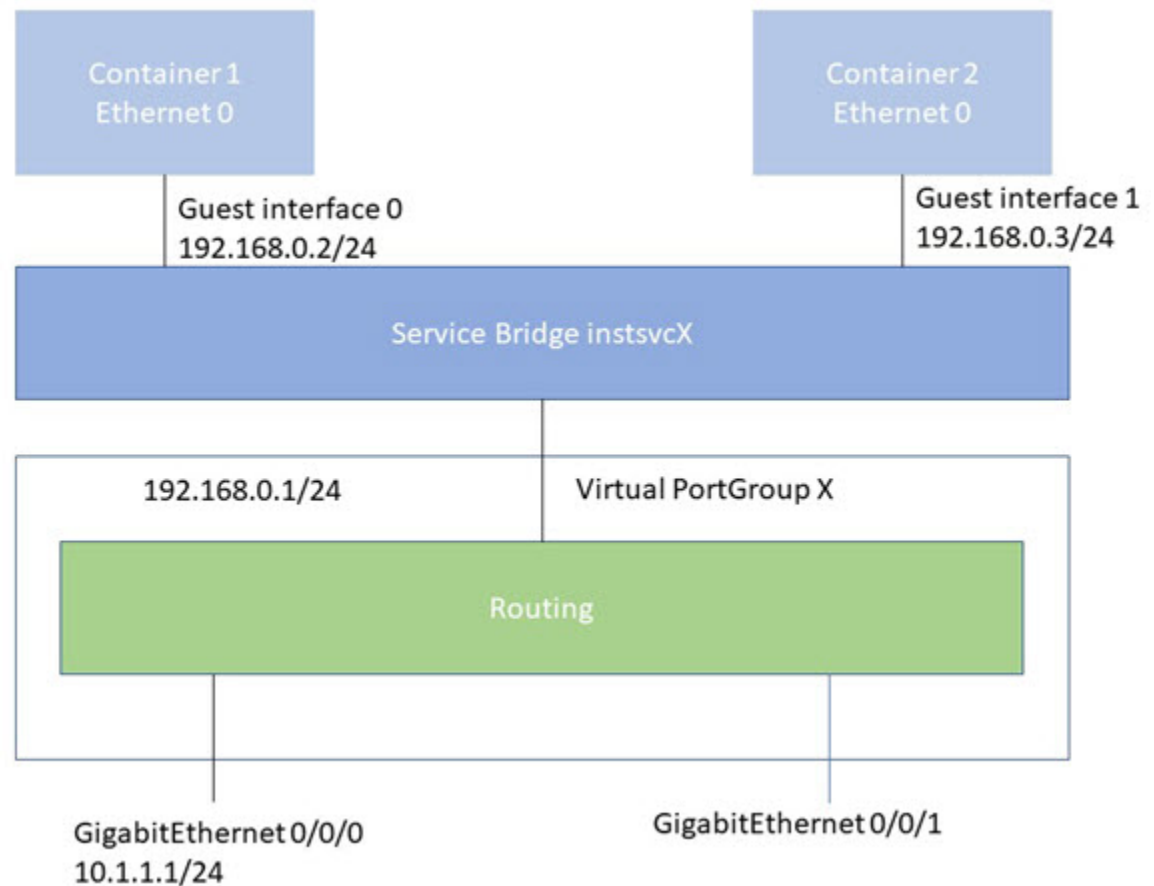
Each bridge can contain multiple interfaces; each mapping to a different container. Each container can also have multiple interfaces.

VirtualPortGroup interfaces are configured by using the interface virtualportgroup command. Once these interfaces are created, IP address and other resources are allocated.

The VirtualPortGroup interface connects the application hosting network to the IOS routing domain. The Layer 3 interface of the application receives routed traffic from IOS. The VirtualPortGroup interface connects through the SVC Bridge to the container/application interface.

The graphic helps to understand the relationship between the VirtualPortGroup and other interfaces, as it is different than the IR8x9 routers.

Figure 4: Virtual Port Group Mapping



vNICs

A vNIC is a virtual network interface card that

- forms part of an application container in a virtual Ethernet pair configuration
- connects to the platform dataplane for sending and receiving packets, and
- operates as a standard Ethernet interface inside the container.

vNIC architecture and management

For container life cycle management, the Layer 3 routing model supports one container per internal logical interface. This configuration creates a virtual Ethernet pair for each application, where one interface (vNIC) belongs to the application container and the other interface (vpgX) belongs to the host system.

IOx manages the following components for each vNIC:

- Gateway (VirtualPortGroup interface) assignment
- IP address allocation
- Unique MAC address assignment

Configure application hosting

Application hosting configuration allows you to deploy, manage, and monitor applications within your network infrastructure.

Enable IOx

The IOx Local Manager provides a web-based user interface that you can use to manage, administer, monitor, and troubleshoot apps on the host system, and to perform a variety of related activities.

Follow these steps to enable IOx.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 3 Use the **iox** command to enable IOx.

Example:

```
Router(config)# iox
```

Step 4 Use the **ip http server** command to enable the HTTP server on your IP or IPv6 system.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip http server
```

Note

In the steps that follow, the IP HTTP commands do not enable IOx, but they allow you to access the WebUI to connect to the IOx Local Manager.

Step 5 Use the **ip http secure-server** command to enable a secure HTTP (HTTPS) server.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip http secure-server
```

Step 6 Use the **username name privilege level password {0 | 7 | user-password} encrypted-password** command to establish a username-based authentication system and privilege level for the user.

Example:

```
Router(config)# username cisco privilege 15 password 0 cisco
```

Note

The username privilege level must be configured as 15.

Step 7 Use the **end** command to exit configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:


```
Router(config)# end
```

Configure a VirtualPortGroup to a Layer 3 data port

Multiple Layer 3 data ports can be routed to one or more VirtualPortGroups or containers. VirtualPortGroups and Layer 3 data ports must be on different subnets.

Enable the `ip routing` command to allow external routing on the Layer 3 data port.

Follow these steps to configure a VirtualPortGroup to a Layer 3 data port.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use these steps for configuring the interface:

- a) Use the **ip routing** command to enable IP routing.

Example:

```
Router(config)# ip routing
```

Note

The `ip routing` command must be enabled to allow external routing on Layer 3 data ports.

- b) Use the **interface type number** command to configure an interface and enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
```

- c) Use the **no switchport** command to place the interface in Layer 3 mode so that it operates like a router interface rather than a switch port.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# no switchport
```

- d) Use the **ip address ip-address mask** command to configure an IP address for the interface.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

- e) Use the **exit** command to exit interface configuration mode and return to global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# exit
```

Step 3 Use these commands to configure the VirtualPortGroup interface:

- a) Use the **interface type number** command to configure the VirtualPortGroup interface and enter interface configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface virtualportgroup 0
```

- b) Use the **ip address** *ip-address mask* command to configure an IP address for the interface.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
```

- c) Use the **end** command to exit interface configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# end
```

- Step 4** Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

- Step 5** Use the **app-hosting appid name** command to configure the application and enter application configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# app-hosting appid app1
```

- Step 6** Use the **app-vnic gateway0 virtualportgroup number guest-interface number** command to configure the application interface and the gateway of the application.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-hosting)# app-vnic gateway0 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 0
```

- Step 7** Use the **guest-ipaddress ip-address netmask mask** command to configure the application Ethernet interface IP address.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# guest-ipaddress 192.168.0.2 netmask 255.255.255.0
```

- Step 8** Use the **app-default-gateway ip-address guest-interface number** command to configure the default gateway for the application.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# app-default-gateway 192.168.0.1 guest-interface 0
```

a)

- Step 9** Use the **end** command to exit application configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-hosting-gateway0)# end
```

Install and uninstall apps

Use this task to manage the complete lifecycle of applications on network devices, from installation through removal.

You can install apps from any local storage location, such as flash, bootflash, and usbflash0. The activation process validates all application resource requests before proceeding.

Follow these steps to install and uninstall apps.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **app-hosting install appid *application-name* package *package-path*** command to install an app from the specified location.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting install appid lxc_app package flash:my_iox_app.tar
```

Note

You can install the app from any local storage location, such as flash, bootflash, and usbflash0.

Step 3 Use the **app-hosting activate appid *application-name*** command to activate the application.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting activate appid app1
```

Note

This command validates all application resource requests. If all resources are available, the application is activated; if not, the activation fails.

Step 4 Use the **app-hosting start appid *application-name*** command to start the application.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting start appid app1
```

Note

The application start-up scripts are activated.

Step 5 Use the **app-hosting stop appid *application-name*** command to stop the application.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting stop appid app1
```

Step 6 Use the **app-hosting deactivate appid *application-name*** command to deactivate the application.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting deactivate appid app1
```

Note

This command deactivates all resources allocated for the application.

Step 7 Use the **app-hosting uninstall appid *application-name*** command to uninstall the application.

Example:

```
Router# app-hosting uninstall appid app1
```

Note

This command uninstalls all packaging and stored images. All changes and updates to the application are also removed.

Override the app resource configuration



Note Resource changes take effect only after you configure the `app-hosting activate` command.

Follow these steps to override the app resource configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 3 Use the **app-hosting appid *name*** command to enable application hosting and enter application hosting configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# app-hosting appid app1
```

Step 4 Use the **app-resource profile *name*** command to configure the custom application resource profile and enter custom application resource profile configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-hosting)# app-resource profile custom
```

Note

Only the custom profile name is supported.

Step 5 Use the **cpu unit** command to change the default CPU allocation for the application.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# cpu 800
```

Note

Resource values are application-specific. Any adjustment to these values must ensure that the application can run reliably with the changes.

Step 6 Use the **memory *memory*** command to change the default memory allocation.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# memory 512
```

Step 7 Use the **vcpu number** command to change the virtual CPU (vCPU) allocation for the application.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# vcpu 2
```

Step 8 Use the **end** command to exit custom application resource profile configuration mode and return to privileged EXEC mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# end
```

Verify the application hosting configuration

Use this verification procedure to check the operational status of IOx services and application hosting on your device. This helps ensure that your application hosting environment is properly configured and running.

Follow these steps to verify the application hosting configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **show iox-service** command to display the status of all IOx services.

Example:

```
Router# show iox-service
IOx Infrastructure Summary:
-----
IOx service (CAF)           : Running
IOx service (HA)            : Not Supported
IOx service (IOxman)        : Running
IOx service (Sec storage)   : Running
Libvirt 5.5.0               : Running
Docker 18.03.0              : Running
Router#
```

Step 3 Use the **show app-hosting detail** command to display detailed information about the application.

Example:

```
Router# show app-hosting detail
App id           : iperf
Owner            : iox
State            : RUNNING
Application
Type             : lxc
Name             : nt08-stress
Version          : 0.1
Description      : Stress Testing Application
Path             : bootflash:sparrow_lxc.tar
URL Path         :
Activated profile name : custom
```

```

Resource reservation
Memory           : 64 MB
Disk             : 2 MB
CPU              : 500 units
CPU-percent      : 31 %
VCPU             : 1

Attached devices
Type             Name                Alias
-----
serial/shell     iox_console_shell    serial0
serial/aux       iox_console_aux      serial1
serial/syslog    iox_syslog           serial2
serial/trace     iox_trace            serial3

Network interfaces
-----
eth0:
MAC address      : 52:54:dd:8e:55:19
IPv4 address     : 192.168.11.2
IPv6 address     : ::
Network name     : VPG1

```

Step 4 Use the **show app-hosting list** command to display the list of applications and their status.

Example:

```

Router# show app-hosting list
App id                               State
-----
app1                                 RUNNING

```

You have successfully verified the application hosting configuration. The IOx services status, detailed application information, and application list confirm the operational state of your application hosting environment.

Configuration examples for application hosting

See the given examples:

Example: Enable IOx

This example demonstrates the command sequence for enabling IOx functionality on a Cisco device, including the necessary HTTP server configuration and user authentication setup.

```

Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# iox
Device(config)# ip http server
Device(config)# ip http secure-server
Device(config)# username cisco privilege 15 password 0 cisco
Device(config)# end

```

VirtualPortGroup configuration to a Layer 3 data port example

This example demonstrates the configuration steps for setting up a VirtualPortGroup interface with Layer 3 routing capabilities and connecting it to a data port.

```
Device> enable
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# ip routing
Device(config)# interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0
Device(config-if)# no switchport
Device(config-if)# ip address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# exit
Device(config)# interface virtualportgroup 0
Device(config-if)# ip address 192.168.0.1 255.255.255.0
Device(config-if)# end
```

App installation and uninstallation commands

This reference shows the sequence of CLI commands used to manage IOx applications throughout their lifecycle on network devices, from initial installation through final removal.

```
Device> enable
Device# app-hosting install appid appl package flash:my_iox_app.tar
Device# app-hosting activate appid appl
Device# app-hosting start appid appl
Device# app-hosting stop appid appl
Device# app-hosting deactivate appid appl
Device# app-hosting uninstall appid appl
```

App resource configuration override example

This example demonstrates how to override the default app resource configuration by creating a custom profile with specific CPU, memory, and vCPU settings for an application.

```
Device# configure terminal
Device(config)# app-hosting appid appl
Device(config-app-hosting)# app-resource profile custom
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# cpu 800
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# memory 512
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# vcpu 2
Device(config-app-resource-profile-custom)# end
```

Native docker support

Native Docker Support is a capability that

- enables users to deploy docker applications on the IR1800
- follows a similar application lifecycle process to the procedure in the Installing and Uninstalling Apps section, and
- requires entry point configuration as part of the application configuration.

Entry point configuration example

The example shows the entry point configuration for docker applications:

```
Router#conf t
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
Router(config)#app-hosting appid app3
Router(config-app-hosting)#app-vnic gateway0 virtualportgroup 0 guest-interface 0
Router(config-app-hosting-gateway0)#guest-ipaddress 192.168.0.7 netmask 255.255.255.0
Router(config-app-hosting-gateway0)#app-default-gateway 192.168.0.1 guest-interface 0
Router(config-app-hosting)#app-resource docker
Router(config-app-hosting-docker)#run-opts 1 "--entrypoint '/bin/sleep 10000'"
Router(config-app-hosting-docker)#end
Router#
```

The output for docker applications is shown in the example:

```
Router#show app-hosting detail
App id : app1
Owner : iox
State : RUNNING
Application
Type : docker
Name : aarch64/busybox
Version : latest
Description :
Path : bootflash:busybox.tar
Activated profile name : custom
Resource reservation
Memory : 431 MB
Disk : 10 MB
CPU : 577 units
VCPU : 1
Attached devices
Type Name Alias
-----
serial/shell iox_console_shell serial0
serial/aux iox_console_aux serial1
serial/syslog iox_syslog serial2
serial/trace iox_trace serial3
Network interfaces
-----
eth0:
MAC address : 52:54:dd:e9:ab:7a
IPv4 address : 192.168.0.7
Network name : VPG0
Docker
-----
Run-time information
Command :
Entry-point : /bin/sleep 10000
Run options in use : --entrypoint '/bin/sleep 10000'
Application health information
Status : 0
Last probe error :
Last probe output :
Router#
```


Enable signed verification for Cisco signed applications

Cisco signed applications are supported on the IR1800. To install a signed application, you must enable signed verification on the device.

Follow these steps to enable signed verification for Cisco signed applications.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **app-hosting signed-verification** command to enable signed verification for applications.

Example:

```
Router(config)# app-hosting signed-verification
```

Step 3 Use the **exit** command to exit configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# exit
```

What to do next

After you enable signed verification, follow the instructions in the Installing and Uninstalling Apps section under IOx Application Hosting to install the application.

Cisco Cyber Vision and Edge Intelligence

Cisco Cyber Vision and Edge Intelligence are integrated solutions that:

- provide real-time monitoring and visibility into Industrial Control Systems (ICS) and Industrial IoT networks
- enable simplified data extraction, transformation, governance and delivery from IoT sensors to applications, and
- integrate with IoT IOS-XE platforms beginning with release 17.4 through IOX sensor deployment.

Cyber Vision Center integration details

Cisco Cyber Vision Center (CVC) gives more visibility into Industrial IoT networks across Industrial Control Systems (ICS) with real-time monitoring of control and data networks. On IoT IOS-XE platforms beginning with release 17.4, integration of CVC is supported by deploying IOX Cyber Vision sensor. With this sensor deployed on IoT Routers, the platform can forward the traffic from IOX applications to Cyber Vision Center for real-time monitoring and we can forward any captured PCAP files to Vision center from IOX application. The minimum Cybervision release is 3.1.1 to work with the IR8100. For more information about CVC, see

[Deployment of Cyber Vision Center \(CVC\) on IOS-XE platform](#) and [Release Notes for Cisco Cyber Vision Release 3.1.1](#).

Cisco Edge Intelligence allows for simplified data extraction from IoT sensors, transformation, governance and delivery to applications that need this data. The release for the IR8100 is version 1.0.6, and is called:

ei_1.0.6_ir1101.K9.tar

Complete information about Cisco Edge Intelligence is found at:

<https://developer.cisco.com/edge-intelligence/>.

Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent

A Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent is a network monitoring solution that

- runs a variety of tests using agents
- provides real-time monitoring of network and application performance, and
- offers multidimensional insights with routing and device data for end-to-end visibility.

Additional information

The Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent enables you to view end-to-end paths across networks and services affecting your business. It actively monitors network traffic paths across internal, external, and internet networks, helping analyze network performance and application availability.

You can use application-hosting features to deploy the Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent as a container application on Cisco Industrial IoT Routers. The agent runs as a Docker container using the Cisco IOx.

Starting with Cisco IOS XE Release 17.18.2, you can configure Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent in Controller mode.

For details about configuring Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent in controller mode, see [Cisco SD-WAN Systems and Interfaces Configuration Guide](#).

For more information about Cisco ThousandEyes Enterprise Agent, see [ThousandEyes Documentation](#).



CHAPTER 20

Cisco SD-WAN support

This document outlines the supported features and operational requirements for Cisco SD-WAN integration.

- [Cisco SD-WAN overview, on page 175](#)
- [Related documentation, on page 176](#)

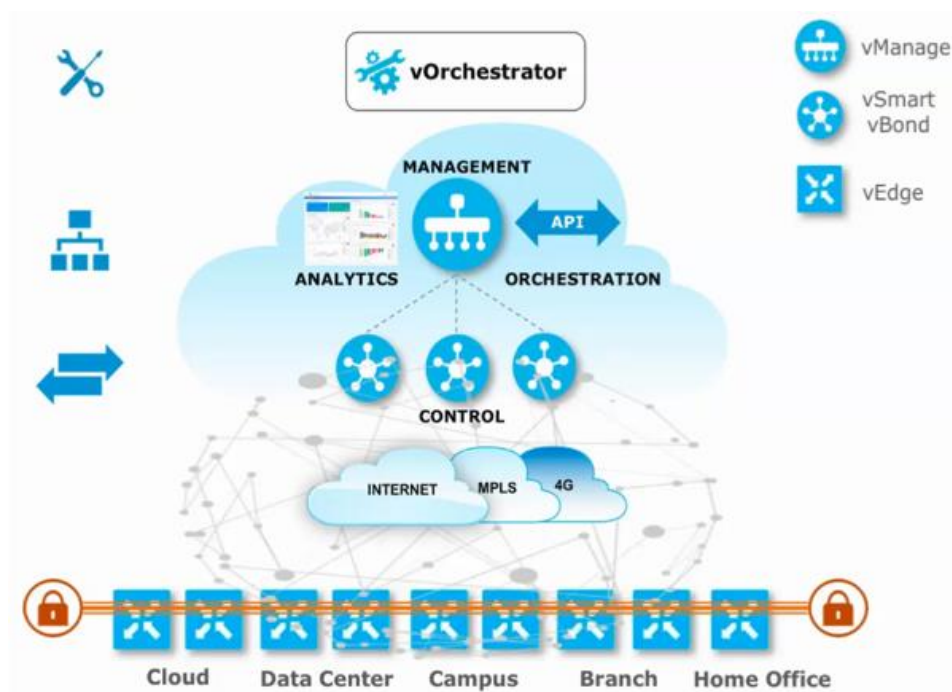
Cisco SD-WAN overview

Provides an overview of the Cisco SD-WAN solution, which consists of vOrchestrator, vManage, vSmart, and vEdge components.

The following components perform specific roles within the SD-WAN solution:

- vOrchestrator: Responsible for launching all controller VMs in the cloud.
- vManage: Acts as the management plane for the overall SD-WAN solution and uses netconf/YANG to communicate with vEdge devices.
- vSmart: Serves as the control plane for the overall SD-WAN solution, acting as the route reflector, key reflector, and policy engine for vEdge devices.
- vEdge: Functions as the data plane of the SD-WAN solution, where the IR8100 platform communicates with vSmart and vManage as part of the network.

Figure 5: High level architecture of SD-WAN



Related documentation

This topic identifies the primary online locations for accessing Cisco SD-WAN technical documentation and support materials.

Cisco SDWAN documentation is available from the following sources:

<https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/routers/sd-wan/tsd-products-support-series-home.html>

https://sdwan-docs.cisco.com/Product_Documentation/Software_Features

All of the technical documentation for Cisco SD-WAN can be found here:

<https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/routers/sd-wan/tsd-products-support-series-home.html>



CHAPTER 21

ROM Monitor overview

This reference describes the fundamental functions and operational context of the ROM Monitor.

- [ROM Monitor overview and basic procedures, on page 177](#)

ROM Monitor overview and basic procedures

ROM Monitor is a bootstrap program that

- provides a recovery mechanism when the normal boot process fails
- enables basic system diagnostic and recovery functions, and
- allows manual system initialization and configuration.

ROM Monitor

A ROM Monitor is a bootstrap program that:

- initializes the hardware and boots the Cisco IOS XE software when you power on or reload a router
- displays the ROM Monitor (`rommon 1>`) prompt when you connect a terminal to the router in ROM Monitor mode, and
- operates as a separate program from the Cisco IOS XE software.

The ROM Monitor software is known by many names. It is sometimes called *ROMMON* because of the CLI prompt in ROM Monitor mode. The ROM Monitor software is also called the *boot software*, *boot image*, or *boot helper*.

ROM Monitor operational characteristics

During normal operation, users do not use ROM Monitor mode. ROM Monitor mode is used only in special circumstances, such as reinstalling the entire software set, resetting the router password, or specifying a configuration file to use at startup.

Although it is distributed with routers that use the Cisco IOS XE software, ROM Monitor is a separate program from the Cisco IOS XE software. During normal startup, the ROM Monitor initializes the router, and then control passes to the Cisco IOS XE software. After the Cisco IOS XE software takes over, the ROM Monitor is no longer in use.

It is important to remember that ROM Monitor mode is a router mode, not a mode within the Cisco IOS XE software. It is best to remember that ROM Monitor software and the Cisco IOS XE software are two separate programs that run on the same router. At any given time, the router runs only one of these programs.

Environmental variables and configuration register provide the primary connections between ROM Monitor and Cisco IOS XE software:

- **ROM Monitor environment variables:** Define the location of the Cisco IOS XE software and describe how to load it. After the ROM Monitor has initialized the router, it uses the environment variables to locate and load the Cisco IOS XE software.
- **Configuration register:** A software setting that controls how a router starts up. One of the primary uses of the configuration register is to control whether the router starts in ROM Monitor mode or Administration EXEC mode.

The configuration register is set in either ROM Monitor mode or Administration EXEC mode as needed. Typically, you set the configuration register using the Cisco IOS XE software prompt when you need to use ROM Monitor mode. When the maintenance in ROM Monitor mode is complete, you change the configuration register so the router reboots with the Cisco IOS XE software.

Access and network management considerations apply when using ROM Monitor mode:

- **Terminal access:** When the router is in ROM Monitor mode, you can access the ROM Monitor software only from a terminal connected directly to the console port of the card. Because the Cisco IOS XE software (EXEC mode) is not operating, nonmanagement interfaces are not accessible.
- **Hardware availability:** The hardware is available, but no configuration exists to make use of the hardware. Basically, all Cisco IOS XE software resources are unavailable.
- **Management Ethernet interface configuration:** When the router is in ROM Monitor mode, the router does not run the Cisco IOS XE software, so that Management Ethernet interface configuration is not available.

When you want to access other devices, such as a TFTP server, while in ROM Monitor mode on the router, you must configure the ROM Monitor variables with IP access information.



Note TFTP access variables are currently not supported on the IR1800 platform.

Access ROM Monitor mode

Access ROM Monitor mode is a boot process that allows network administrators to enter the device's low-level diagnostic and recovery environment when normal boot processes fail or when manual intervention is required.

ROM Monitor mode access methods

These sections describe how to enter the ROMMON mode.

Check the current ROMmon version

This task helps you identify the current ROMmon version and view all ROMmon variables configured on your router for troubleshooting and system verification purposes.

Follow these steps to check the current ROMmon version.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **show rom-monitor** command to display the version of ROMmon running on the router.

Example:

```
Router# show rom-monitor r0
System Bootstrap, Version 1.4(DEV) [root-vganev 100], DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2020 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled at Mon Dec 7 18:02:07 2020 by root
```

- Step 2** Use the **show romvar** command to display all variables that are set in ROMmon.

Example:

```
Router# show romvar
ROMMON variables:
PS1 = rommon ! >
THRPUT =
LICENSE_BOOT_LEVEL = network-advantage,all:IR8100;
RET_2_RTS =
BOOT =
bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148.SSA.bin,12;
CONSOLE_LOCK = 0
BSI = 0
RET_2_RCALTS =
RANDOM_NUM = 307121635
```

- Step 3** Use the **reload** command to reload the router and access ROMmon mode if your configuration register is set to the hex value 0x0 or 0x1820.

Example:

```
Router# reload
```

Note

If your configuration register is set to the hex value 0x0 or 0x1820, the reload operation brings you to the ROMmon mode command prompt (rommon 1>).

- Step 4** Use the **set** command to display the same information as the **show romvar** command displays in Cisco IOS XE EXEC mode at the ROMmon prompt, .

Example:

```
rommon 1 > set
PS1=rommon ! >
THRPUT=
LICENSE_BOOT_LEVEL=network-advantage,all:IR8100;
RET_2_RTS=
BOOT=bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148.SSA.bin,12;
CONSOLE_LOCK=0
BSI=0
RANDOM_NUM=307121635
RET_2_RCALTS=1611876425
```

Commonly used ROM Monitor commands

The following table summarizes the commands commonly used in ROM Monitor. For specific instructions on using these commands, refer to the relevant procedure in this document.

Table 33: Commonly Used ROM Monitor Commands

ROMMON Command	Description
boot image	Manually boots a Cisco IOS XE software image.
boot image -o config-file-path	Manually boots the Cisco IOS XE software with a temporary alternative administration configuration file.
confreg	Changes the config-register setting.
dev	Displays the available local storage devices.
dir	Displays the files on a storage device.
reset	Resets the node.
set	Displays the currently set ROM Monitor environmental settings.
sync	Saves the new ROM Monitor environmental settings.
unset	Removes an environmental variable setting.

Examples

The following example shows what appears when you enter the ? command on a router:

```
rommon 1 > ?
alias          set and display aliases command
boot           boot up an external process
confreg        configuration register utility
dev            list the device table
dir            list files in file system
help           monitor builtin command help
history        monitor command history
meminfo        main memory information
repeat         repeat a monitor command
reset          system reset
set            display the monitor variables
showmon        display currently selected ROM monitor
sync           write monitor environment to NVRAM
token          display board's unique token identifier
unalias        unset an alias
unset          unset a monitor variable
```

Change the ROM Monitor prompt

Changing the prompt is useful if you are working with multiple routers in ROM Monitor at the same time.

Follow these steps to change the ROM Monitor prompt:

Procedure

Use the **PS1=** command to change the prompt.

Example:

```
rommon 8 > PS1="IR1800 rommon ! > "  
IR1800 rommon 9 >
```

This example specifies that the prompt should be "IR1800 rommon ", followed by the line number, and then followed by "> " by the line number.

Display the configuration register setting

The configuration register setting determines various system behaviors, including boot options and console settings. You can display this information using ROM Monitor commands.

Follow these steps to display the configuration register setting.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **confreg** command without parameters to display the current configuration register setting.

Example:

```
rommon > confreg  
Configuration Summary  
(Virtual Configuration Register: )  
enabled are:  
[ 0 ] break/abort has effect  
[ 1 ] console baud: 9600  
boot:..... the ROM Monitor  
do you wish to change the configuration? y/n [n]:
```

Note

- The configuration register setting is labeled **Virtual Configuration Register**.
- The system displays the current configuration register settings and prompts whether you want to change the configuration.

Step 2 Enter **no** to avoid changing the configuration register setting.

Environment variable settings

Environment variable settings are ROM Monitor configuration parameters that:

- define the attributes of the ROM Monitor
- are entered like commands and are always followed by the equal sign (=), and

- are entered in capital letters, followed by a definition.

Environment variable configuration details

Under normal operating conditions, you do not need to modify these variables. They are cleared or set only when you need to make changes to the way ROM Monitor operates.

Environment variable settings are entered using the following format:

```
IP_ADDRESS=10.0.0.2
```

Frequently used environmental variables

The following table shows the main ROM Monitor environmental variables. For instructions on how to use these variables, see the relevant instructions in this document. The IR1800 boot loader does not support netboot, so any setting like environment variables IP_ADDRESS, IP_SUBNET_MASK, DEFAULT_GATEWAY, TFTP_SERVER, TFTP_FILE are not used.

Table 34: Frequently Used ROM Monitor Environmental Variables

Environmental variable	Description
BOOT =path/file	Identifies the boot software for a node. This variable is usually set automatically when the router boots.

Display environment variable settings

Procedure

Enter the **showmon** command.

Example:

```
rommon 1 > showmon
System Bootstrap, Version 1.4(DEV) [root-vganev 100], DEVELOPMENT SOFTWARE
Copyright (c) 1994-2020 by cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled at Mon Dec 7 18:02:07 2020 by root

IR8140H-P-K9 platform with CPU platform IRMH-SUP-SP and 8388608 Kbytes of main memory

MCU Version - Bootloader : 0x22, App : 0x38
MCU is in Application mode.
```

The system displays the current environment variable settings including system bootstrap information, platform details, and MCU version information.

Environment variable settings

Environment variable settings are entered in capital letters, followed by a definition. The following example shows the environmental variables that can be configured in ROMmon mode.

```
rommon 1 > confreg 0x0
rommon 1> BOOT_WDOG = DISABLE
rommon 1> BOOT = IR8100-K9_image_name
```

Save environment variable settings

Environment variable values that are not saved with the `sync` command are discarded whenever the system is reset or booted.

Follow these steps to save the environment variable settings.

Procedure

Use the **sync** command to save the current environment variable settings.

Example:

```
rommon > sync
```

Exit ROM Monitor mode

To exit ROM Monitor mode, you must change the configuration register and reset the router.

Follow these steps to exit ROM Monitor mode.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Use the **confreg** command to initiate the configuration register configuration prompts.

Example:

```
rommon 1> confreg
```

Note

Respond to each prompt as instructed. For more information, see the example that follows this procedure.

- Step 2** Use the **reset** command to reset and initialize the router.

Example:

```
rommon 2> reset
```

Configuration example

This example demonstrates the configuration register setup process through ROM Monitor interface, showing the interactive prompts and default settings available during system configuration.

```
rommon 3 > confreg
Configuration Summary
```

```

(Virtual Configuration Register: 0x0)
enabled are:
[ 0 ] break/abort has effect
[ 1 ] console baud: 9600
boot: ..... the ROM Monitor
do you wish to change the configuration? y/n [n]: y
enable "diagnostic mode"? y/n [n]:
enable "use net in IP bcast address"? y/n [n]:
enable "load rom after netboot fails"? y/n [n]:
enable "use all zero broadcast"? y/n [n]:
disable "break/abort has effect"? y/n [n]:
enable "ignore system config info"? y/n [n]:
change console baud rate? y/n [n]:
change the boot characteristics? y/n [n]:
Configuration Summary
(Virtual Configuration Register: 0x0)
enabled are:
[ 0 ] break/abort has effect
[ 1 ] console baud: 9600
boot: ..... the ROM Monitor
do you wish to change the configuration? y/n [n]:

```

Upgrade the ROMmon for a router

The ROMmon upgrade on the IR1800-K9 router is done automatically when the image is booted. The latest version of the ROMmon is bundled with the Cisco IOS XE image. An algorithm detects whether the current running version is older than the bundled version; if so, it is automatically upgraded. If the current running version is equal to the bundled version, no upgrade is executed. For every successful upgrade, the router is automatically rebooted so that the new version is loaded and executed.

Follow these steps to upgrade the ROMmon for a router.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** (Optional) Use the **show rom-monitor slot** command on the router to display the current release numbers of the ROMmon on the hardware.

Note

For information about interpreting the output of this command, see the relevant command reference.

- Step 2** If autoboot is not enabled using the **config-register 0x2102** command, use the **boot filesystem:/file-location** command at the ROMmon prompt to boot the Cisco IOS XE image, where *filesystem:/file-location* is the path to the consolidated package file.

Note

The ROMmon upgrade is not permanent for any piece of hardware until the Cisco IOS XE image is booted.

- Step 3** Use the **enable** command at the user prompt to enter privileged EXEC mode after the boot is complete.
- Step 4** Use the **show rom-monitor slot** command to verify whether the ROMmon has been upgraded.
-



CHAPTER 22

WAN Monitoring

This reference outlines the monitoring features and diagnostic tools used to track WAN performance and status.

- [WANMon, on page 185](#)
- [Prerequisites, on page 186](#)
- [Guidelines and limitations, on page 187](#)
- [Configure WANMon, on page 187](#)
- [Verify WANMon configuration, on page 189](#)
- [Configuration examples, on page 189](#)

WANMon

WANMon is a flexible solution that:

- addresses WAN link recovery requirements for physical networks and virtual links
- monitors WAN links for failure detection, and
- initiates link recovery actions on receipt of link failure triggers.

Supported products and interfaces

WANMon supports the following networks and interfaces:

- Physical networks: 4G LTE and Ethernet (WAN port)
- Virtual links: Non-crypto map based IPSec tunnels (either legacy or FlexVPN); that is, any IPSec tunnel you configure as an interface.

Built-in recovery actions

The following are the three levels of built-in recovery processes specific to the link type:

Link Type	Recovery Actions		
	Level 0 (Immediate)	Level 1 (Active)	Level 2 (Last-Resort)
4G LTE	Clear interface, and then shut/no-shut	Module reload	System reload
Ethernet	Clear interface, and then shut/no-shut	No action taken	System reload
Tunnel	Shut/no-shut	No action taken	System reload

Each level has two time-based thresholds based on which built-in recovery actions are taken. The following are the default settings for each level:

- *threshold* is the wait time in minutes after receipt of a link failure trigger to initiate the recovery action as set in the specified level.
- *mintime* is the frequency to perform the recovery action if the link remains down.

The built-in values are:

Level	threshold	mintime	Description
Level 0	10 min	10 min	Triggers Level 0 actions 10 minutes after the link went down. Repeat no more than every 10 minutes.
Level 1	60 min	60 min	Triggers Level 1 actions 10 minutes after the link went down. Repeat no more than every 60 minutes.
Level 2	480 min	60 min	Triggers Level 2 actions 480 minutes after the link went down. Repeat no more than every 60 minutes.



Note If threshold values are specified as 0, no recovery actions are taken for that level. You can use this to avoid system reload (the built-in Level 2 recovery action) on receipt of a link failure trigger where other WAN links may be operational.

Prerequisites

Provides the requirements for the WANMon module, specifically the inclusion of the **tm_wanmon.tcl** policy file in the IOS-XE image.

Ensure that the WANMon module is available. The WANMon module is included in the IOS-XE image as the **tm_wanmon.tcl** policy file.

Guidelines and limitations

This section outlines the functional behavior of WANMon regarding IP address checking and event triggering, along with necessary precautions for live network environments.

These guidelines apply to WANMon operations:

- WANMon automatically performs IP address checking (no user configuration) as required for cellular interfaces.
- For all other interfaces, WANMon never performs IP address checking.
- WANMon indirectly triggers user-specified actions by generating an application event that link resetter applets monitor.
- If your network is live, ensure that you understand the potential impact of any command.

Configure WANMon

You can enable WANMon on the router and assign WANMon support to specific interfaces. Optionally, you can override the built-in recovery actions, define custom recovery links, and define an event manager environment policy to set the track object value and disable IP address checking.



Note WANMon is disabled by default.

Follow these steps to configure WANMon.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **event manager policy tm_wanmon.tcl authorization bypass** command to enable the WANMon link recovery module.

Example:

```
Router(config)# event manager policy tm_wanmon.tcl authorization bypass
```

Note

Use the `authorization bypass` keywords to avoid authorization for CLIs invoked by this policy.

- Step 2** Use the **event manager environment wanmon_if_list instance {interface-name {ipsla instance}}** command to configure WANMon for the interfaces in your WAN.

Example:

```
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list1 {cellular0/4/0 {ipsla 1}}
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list2 {GigabitEthernet0/0/0 {ipsla 2}}
```

Note

- Any environment variable with the prefix `wanmon_if_list` constitutes an interface configuration.
- Multiple interfaces are allowed by specifying an instance.

- Be sure to specify the full interface name (for example, `cellular0/4/0` or `cellular0/5/0`).
- You can set the IP SLA `icmp-echo` trigger, if desired. Multiple IP SLA triggers are allowed by specifying an instance.
- WANMon only looks at the status of the SLA ID. Although `icmp-echo` is most common, you can use any other type of SLA probe (for example, `udp-echo`) instead, if needed.

Step 3 (Optional) Use the **event manager environment wanmon_if_listx** *{interface-name {recovery Level0 {Level1} Level2}}* command to override the built-in thresholds.

Step 4 (Optional) Use the **publish-event sub-system 798 type 2000 arg1 interface-name arg2 level** command to configure custom recovery actions using link resetter applets.

Note

- *interface-name* is the full interface name (for example, `cellular0/4/0` or `cellular0/5/0`).
- *level* is 0, 1, or 2 to match the desired link recovery action.

Step 5 (Optional) Use the **{stub track-stub-id}** keyword to allow an event manager environment policy to set the track object value.

Note

WANMon can set a track-stub-object value to reflect the link state so that an external applet can track the stub object.

Step 6 (Optional) Use the **event manager environment wanmon_if_listx** *{interface-name {checkip instance}}* command to disable IP address checking.

The following example enables the WANMon link recovery module:

```
Router(config)# event manager policy tm_wanmon.tcl authorization bypass
```

The following examples configure cellular and Ethernet interfaces:

```
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list1 {cellular0/4/0 {ipsla 1}}
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list2 {GigabitEthernet0/0/0 {ipsla 2}}
```

The following example sets custom recovery thresholds:

```
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list {cellular0/4/0 {recovery 20 {90 75} 600}}
```

In this example:

- The Level 0 threshold is set to 20 minutes after the link failure trigger. Level 0 recovery actions are performed for the cellular interface and repeat indefinitely, no more than every 10 minutes (default).
- The Level 1 threshold is set to 90 minutes. Level 1 recovery actions are performed for the cellular interface and repeat no more frequently than every 75 minutes.
- The Level 2 threshold is set to 600 minutes (10 hours).

The following example sets the track-stub-object value to 21:


```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# track 21 stub-object
Router(config)# event manager environment wanmon_if_list {cellular0/4/0 {ipsla 1} {stub 21}}
```

Verify WANMon configuration

Follow these steps to verify your WANMon configuration.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the **show event manager policy registered** command to display the WAN monitoring policy.

Example:

```
Router# show event manager policy registered
1 script system multiple Off Thu Jan 16 18:44:29 2014 tm_wanmon.tcl
```

- Step 2** Use the **show event manager environment** command to display the interface environment variables set during interface configuration.

Example:

```
Router# show event manager environment
1 wanmon_if_list {cell0/4/0 {ipsla 1}}
```

Configuration examples

The following examples are provided:

WANMon cellular interface configuration example

This configuration example demonstrates the setup of WANMon for a cellular interface, including IP SLA tracking, ICMP echo configuration, and event manager policy settings.

```
track 1 ip sla 1
ip sla 1
 icmp-echo 172.27.166.250
 timeout 6000
 frequency 300
ip sla schedule 1 life forever start-time now
event manager environment wanmon_if_list {cellular0/4/0 {ipsla 1}}
event manager policy tm_wanmon.tcl authorization bypass
```

Multiple WAN link monitoring example

This example demonstrates how to configure multiple WAN link monitoring using IP SLA operations with track objects and event manager policies. The configuration includes ICMP echo operations for two different target addresses with associated tracking objects and stub objects for failover scenarios.

```
track 1 ip sla 1
track 21 stub-object
ip sla 1
  icmp-echo 172.27.166.250
  timeout 6000
  frequency 300
ip sla schedule 1 life forever start-time now
track 2 ip sla 2
track 22 stub-object
ip sla 2
  icmp-echo 10.27.16.25
  timeout 6000
  frequency 300
ip sla schedule 2 life forever start-time now
event manager environment wanmon_if_list1 {cellular0/4/0 {ipsla 1} {stub 21}}
event manager policy tm_wanmon.tcl authorization bypass
```



CHAPTER 23

Yang data models

This document outlines the structure and application of Yang data models within the system environment.

- [Support for YANG data models, on page 191](#)

Support for YANG data models

Provides access to the supported YANG data models for the IR1840H, maintaining parity with previous Cisco IOS XE software releases.

The YANG models supported are similar to the earlier releases of Cisco IOS XE, and the same is supported for the release of IOS XE on the IR1840H. The following references are available for earlier YANG models:

<https://github.com/YangModels/yang/tree/master/vendor/cisco/xr>



CHAPTER 24

Process health monitors

This chapter describes how to manage and monitor the health of various components of your router.

- [Process health monitors, on page 193](#)

Process health monitors

This chapter describes how to manage and monitor the health of various components of your router.

Control plane resources

Control plane resources refer to the memory and CPU components that are monitored to ensure optimal operation of the Cisco IOS process and the overall control plane.

- Includes monitoring of both memory and CPU usage.
- Focuses on the Cisco IOS process and the overall control plane.
- Helps in identifying and preventing potential resource-related issues.

Details of memory and CPU monitoring for control plane resources

These sections provide more information about monitoring memory and CPU resources in the control plane:

- [System process monitors, on page 193](#)
- [View Cisco IOS process resource](#)
- [Overall Control Plane resources, on page 195](#)

System process monitors

Regular monitoring is a proactive approach that ensures system processes and resources are functioning correctly by providing status notifications and enabling timely intervention.

- Processes provide monitoring and notification of their status or health.
- Syslog error messages are displayed when a process fails, is stuck, or crashes.
- Automatic actions include restarting the process or rebooting the router if necessary.

System resources and process health

Monitoring system resources enables early detection of potential problems, helps avoid outages, and establishes a baseline for normal system load.

Consider an scenario where after upgrading hardware or software, you can compare current resource usage with the established baseline to determine if the upgrade has affected system performance. This explains how the system resources monitoring helps maintain the process health.

View Cisco IOS process resource

You can use the **show memory** and **show process cpu** commands to view CPU and memory utilization statistics for active processes in Cisco IOS. These commands provide a representation of memory and CPU utilization from the perspective of only the Cisco IOS process; they do not include information for resources on the entire platform.

Procedure

- Step 1** Use the Enter the **show memory** command in privileged EXEC mode to display memory usage for the Cisco IOS process.

Example:

```
Router# show memory
Tracekey : 1#b93c0f1c0d5d16ddc3ab8e54342a8dd5
Head      Total (b)      Used (b)      Free (b)      Lowest (b)      Largest (b)
Processor 7F5F358048      1997625144    290200588     1707424556     487419128      1509949348
reserve P 7F5F3580A0          102404        92            102312         102312         102312
lsmpi_io 7F5D9901A8      6295128      6294304        824           824           412
Dynamic heap limit (MB) 1440      Use (MB) 0
Processor memory
Address      Bytes      Prev      Next      Ref      PrevF      NextF      what
Alloc PC
7F5F358048 0000102408 00000000 7F5F3710A8 001  -----  ----- *Init*
:555F22A000+5E5691C
7F5F3710A8 0000000056 7F5F358048 7F5F371138 001  -----  ----- *Init*
:555F22A000+5E56938
7F5F371138 0000008224 7F5F3710A8 7F5F3731B0 001  -----  ----- *Init*
:555F22A000+5E56958
...
7F5F594D38 0000020008 7F5F5942B8 7F5F599BB8 001  -----  ----- Peer uid cb chu
:555F22A000+ACBBE98
```

The output displays memory usage statistics for the Cisco IOS process, including total, used, and free memory, as well as detailed memory allocation information.

- Step 2** Use the **show process cpu** command to display CPU utilization for the Cisco IOS process.

Example:

```
Router# show process cpu
CPU utilization for five seconds: 0%/0%; one minute: 0%; five minutes: 0%
PID Runtime(ms)      Invoked      uSecs      5Sec      1Min      5Min TTY Process
1          8          31          258  0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 Chunk Manager
2          8       10141           0  0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 Load Meter
3          0           1           0  0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 PKI Trustpool
4          0           1           0  0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 Retransmission o
...
45         0           1           0  0.00%  0.00%  0.00%  0 IPC Seat Manager
```

This command displays CPU utilization averages for five seconds, one minute, and five minutes, as well as per-process statistics for the Cisco IOS process.

Step 3 Use the **show process cpu platform sorted** command to view platform-level CPU utilization.

Example:

```
show process cpu platform sorted
CPU utilization for five seconds: 9%, one minute: 10%, five minutes: 10%
Core 0: CPU utilization for five seconds: 3%, one minute: 4%, five minutes: 4%
Core 1: CPU utilization for five seconds: 4%, one minute: 4%, five minutes: 4%
Core 2: CPU utilization for five seconds: 2%, one minute: 2%, five minutes: 2%
Core 3: CPU utilization for five seconds: 38%, one minute: 38%, five minutes: 38%
Pid      PPid      5Sec      1Min      5Min      Status      Size      Name
-----
18700    18679      44%      44%      44%      S           235192    qfp-ucode-avent
5226     5216       2%       3%       3%       S           697124    linux_iosd-imag
24238    24231       1%       1%       1%       S           8288      ngiolite
...
13884    13874       0%       0%       0%       S           2816      flash_check.sh
```

This command provides CPU utilization statistics for each core and process on the platform, allowing you to identify resource usage beyond the Cisco IOS process.

Overall Control Plane resources

Provides visibility into control plane resource utilization using the **show platform software status control-processor brief** and **show platform software status control-processors** commands.

Identifies the status values for control processors:

- **Healthy:** The processor is operating within normal parameters.
- **Warning:** The router is operational, but the operating level requires review.
- **Critical:** The router is nearing failure.

Outlines recommended actions when a Warning or Critical status is observed:

- Reduce static and dynamic loads on the system by limiting configuration elements or dynamic service capacity.
- Reduce the number of routes, adjacencies, and ACL rules.

Load average

Load average represents the process queue or process contention for CPU resources. For example, on a single-core processor, an instantaneous load of 7 would mean that seven processes are ready to run, one of which is currently running. On a dual-core processor, a load of 7 would mean that seven processes are ready to run, two of which are currently running.

Memory utilization

Memory utilization is represented by the following fields:

- **Total:** Total system memory

- Used: Consumed memory
- Free: Available memory
- Committed: Virtual memory committed to processes

CPU utilization

CPU utilization indicates the percentage of time the CPU is busy, represented by the following fields:

- CPU: Allocated processor
- User: Non-Linux kernel processes
- System: Linux kernel process
- Nice: Low-priority processes
- Idle: Percentage of time the CPU was inactive
- IRQ: Interrupts
- SIRQ: System Interrupts
- IOWait: Percentage of time CPU was waiting for I/O

```
Router# show platform software status control-processor
RP0: online, statistics updated 10 seconds ago
Load Average: healthy
1-Min: 1.28, status: healthy, under 5.00
5-Min: 0.74, status: healthy, under 5.00
15-Min: 0.78, status: healthy, under 5.00
Memory (kb): healthy
Total: 8154204
Used: 2282364 (28%), status: healthy
Free: 5871840 (72%)
Committed: 2025108 (25%), under 90%
Per-core Statistics
CPU0: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 2.46, System: 5.53, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 90.87
IRQ: 0.82, SIRQ: 0.20, IOWait: 0.10
CPU1: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 2.24, System: 5.91, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 90.91
IRQ: 0.71, SIRQ: 0.20, IOWait: 0.00
CPU2: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 0.50, System: 1.82, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 97.16
IRQ: 0.50, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00
CPU3: CPU Utilization (percentage of time spent)
User: 13.03, System: 12.88, Nice: 0.00, Idle: 62.51IRQ: 11.55, SIRQ: 0.00, IOWait: 0.00

Router# show platform software status control-processor brief
Load Average
Slot Status 1-Min 5-Min 15-Min
RP0 Healthy 0.99 0.72 0.77
Memory (kB)
Slot Status Total Used (Pct) Free (Pct) Committed (Pct)
RP0 Healthy 8154204 2281012 (28%) 5873192 (72%) 2032232 (25%)
CPU Utilization
Slot CPU User System Nice Idle IRQ SIRQ IOWait
RP0 0 1.02 1.84 0.00 96.30 0.61 0.10 0.10
1 0.72 1.85 0.00 96.60 0.61 0.20 0.00
2 0.50 1.62 0.00 97.25 0.60 0.00 0.00
3 11.78 14.28 0.00 62.44 11.34 0.14 0.00
```



```
Boot Flash Disk Monitoring
Aug 24 07:48:31.088 GMT: %FLASH_CHECK-3-DISK_QUOTA: R0/0: flash_check: Flash disk quota
exceeded
[free space is 83820 kB] - Please clean up files on flash1.
```

Monitoring hardware using alarms

Router design and monitoring hardware

The router sends alarm notifications when problems are detected, allowing you to monitor the network remotely. You do not need to use **show** commands to poll devices on a routine basis; however, you can perform onsite monitoring if you choose.

BootFlash Disk Monitoring

Ensures the bootflash disk maintains enough free space to store two core dumps.

The bootflash disk must have enough free space to store two core dumps. This condition is monitored, and if the bootflash disk is too small to store two core dumps, a syslog alarm is generated, as shown in the following example:

```
Oct 6 14:10:56.292: %FLASH_CHECK-3-DISK_QUOTA: R0/0: flash_check: Flash disk quota exceeded
[free space is 1429020 kB] - Please clean up files on bootflash.
```

Approaches for monitoring hardware alarms

Provides an overview of the monitoring strategies used to identify and respond to hardware-related alerts.

Viewing the console or syslog for alarm messages

The network administrator monitors alarm messages by reviewing messages sent to the system console or to a system message log (syslog).

Enabling the logging alarm command

The **logging alarm** command allows the system to transmit alarm messages to configured logging destinations.

The **logging alarm** command is not enabled by default. You can specify the severity level of the alarms to be logged, where all alarms at and above the specified threshold generate alarm messages.

If alarm severity is not specified, alarm messages for all severity levels are sent to logging devices.

```
Router(config)# logging alarm critical
```

Network management system alerts a network administrator when an alarm is reported through SNMP

SNMP is an application-layer protocol that provides a standardized framework and a common language used for monitoring and managing devices in a network.

- Provides notification of faults, alarms, and conditions that might affect services.
- Allows a network administrator to access router information through a network management system (NMS).
- Eliminates the need for manual log reviews, device polling, or log report analysis.

SNMP alarm notification MIB requirements

To use SNMP to get alarm notification, use these MIBs:

- ENTITY-MIB, RFC4133 (required for the CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB, ENTITY-STATE-MIB and CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB to work)
- CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB
- ENTITY-STATE-MIB
- CISCO-ENTITY-SENSOR-MIB (for transceiver environmental alarm information, which is not provided through the CISCO-ENTITY-ALARM-MIB)



CHAPTER 25

Unified Threat Defence

This reference provides the necessary information to configure and manage Unified Threat Defence features within the network security architecture.

- [Unified threat defense, on page 199](#)
- [Unified threat defense restrictions, on page 200](#)
- [License requirements for UTD features, on page 200](#)
- [References for unified threat defense configuration on IR8140, on page 200](#)

Unified threat defense

Unified Threat Defense (UTD) is Cisco's premier network security solution which provides a comprehensive suite of security features, such as:

- Enterprise Firewall
- Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)/Intrusion Detection System (IDS)
- Advanced Malware Protection
- URL Filtering, and
- DNS Security

Table 35: Feature History Table

Feature name	Release information	Feature description
Unified Threat Defense	Release 26.1.1	For enhanced protection across network, you can leverage Unified Threat Defense (UTD) which is Cisco's premier network security solution, to access a comprehensive suite of security features including: • Enterprise Firewall, IPS/IDS • Advanced Malware Protection • URL Filtering, and DNS Security

Unified threat defense restrictions

These product-specific restrictions apply.

- UTD container requires a minimum space of 1.8 GB.
- UTD is supported in both autonomous mode and controller mode, but in autonomous mode, only IPS/IDS features are supported.
- The UTD configuration supports the Cloud-Low profile only.
- On-Box Web-Filtering database is not supported.
- TLS decryption is not supported.

License requirements for UTD features

To enable UTD features, these licensing requirements apply:

- To enable UTD features in SD-Router (autonomous mode), you must have both a DNA Essentials license and a Network Essentials license.
- To use Cisco Secure Malware Analytics, you must have both a DNA Advantage license and a Network Advantage license.

References for unified threat defense configuration on IR8140

Configuration on the IR8140 is the same as on other products. For configuration information refer to:

- [Unified Threat Defense Resource Profiles](#)
- [Intrusion Prevention System](#)
- [URL Filtering](#)
- [Advanced Malware Protection](#)



CHAPTER 26

Troubleshooting

This reference outlines the standard procedures for diagnosing and correcting operational errors.

- [Troubleshooting, on page 201](#)
- [Diagnostic mode, on page 201](#)
- [Recommendation: prepare information before contacting support, on page 202](#)
- [Show interfaces troubleshooting command, on page 202](#)
- [Software upgrade methods, on page 203](#)
- [Change the configuration register, on page 203](#)
- [Recover a lost password, on page 206](#)

Troubleshooting

This section describes the troubleshooting scenarios for the router.

Before troubleshooting a software problem, you must connect a PC to the router via the console port. With a connected PC, you can view status messages from the router and enter commands to troubleshoot a problem.

You can also remotely access the interface by using Telnet. The Telnet option assumes that the interface is up and running.

Diagnostic mode

Diagnostic mode is a router operating mode that

- provides access to a subset of user EXEC mode commands for troubleshooting when the IOS process fails
- enables inspection of router states, configuration management, and process restart capabilities
- offers a more comprehensive troubleshooting interface than limited access methods like ROMMON.

Diagnostic mode access scenarios

The router boots up or accesses diagnostic mode in these scenarios:

- The IOS process or processes fail, in some scenarios. In other scenarios, the system resets when the IOS process or processes fail.

- A user-configured access policy was configured using the **transport-map** command that directs the user into the diagnostic mode.
- A send break signal (**Ctrl-C** or **Ctrl-Shift-6**) was entered while accessing the router, and the router was configured to enter diagnostic mode when a break signal was sent.

In the diagnostic mode, a subset of the commands that are available in user EXEC mode are made available to the users. Among other things, these commands can be used to:

- Inspect various states on the router, including the IOS state.
- Replace or roll back the configuration.
- Provide methods of restarting the IOS or other processes.
- Reboot hardware, such as the entire router, a module, or possibly other hardware components.
- Transfer files into or off of the router using remote access methods such as FTP, TFTP, and SCP.

The diagnostic mode provides a more comprehensive user interface for troubleshooting than previous routers, which relied on limited access methods during failures, such as ROMMON, to diagnose and troubleshoot Cisco IOS problems. The diagnostic mode commands can work when the Cisco IOS process is not working properly. These commands are also available in privileged EXEC mode on the router when the router is working normally.

Recommendation: prepare information before contacting support

If you cannot locate the source of a problem, contact your local reseller for advice. Prepare this information before you call:

- Chassis type and serial number
- Maintenance agreement or warranty information
- Type of software and version number
- Date you received the hardware
- Brief description of the problem
- Brief description of the steps you have taken to isolate the problem

Show interfaces troubleshooting command

Use the **show interfaces** command to display the status of all physical ports and logical interfaces on the router. describes messages in the command output.

The IR1800 supports these interfaces:

- GigabitEthernet 0/0/0 and 0/0/1
- Cellular 0/2/0, Cellular 0/2/1, Cellular 0/3/0, and Cellular 0/3/1
- msata

- WPAN 0/1/0

Software upgrade methods

Software upgrade methods are techniques that

- copy new software images to flash memory over the WAN interface when the existing Cisco IOS software image is in use
- copy new software images over the console port while in ROM monitor mode, and
- boot the router from a software image loaded on a TFTP server from ROM monitor mode when the TFTP server is on the same network as the router.

Change the configuration register

The configuration register controls various boot-time settings on Cisco routers. You may need to modify this register to enable break functionality or change other boot parameters.

Follow these steps to change the configuration register.

Procedure

Step 1 Connect a PC to the CONSOLE port on the router.

Step 2 At the privileged EXEC prompt, use the **show version** command to display the existing configuration register value.

Example:

```
Router# show version
Cisco IOS XE Software, Version
BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148
Cisco IOS Software [Bengaluru], ISR Software
(ARMV8EL_LINUX_IOSD-UNIVERSALK9_IOT-M), Experimental Version 17.5.20210124:064309
[S2C-build-v175_throttle-507-/nobackup/mcpre/BLD-BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209
226]

Copyright (c) 1986-2021 by Cisco Systems, Inc.
Compiled Sun 24-Jan-21 06:10 by mcpre

ROM: 1.4 (REL)

UUT3_Sec uptime is 17 hours, 37 minutes
Uptime for this control processor is 17 hours, 38 minutes
System returned to ROM by reload
System image file is
"bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210124_063209_V17_5_0_148.SSA.bin"

Last reload reason: Reload Command

Technology Package License Information:

-----
Technology Type      Technology-package    Technology-package
```

```
Current          Next Reboot
-----
Smart License    Perpetual          network-advantage  network-advantage

Smart License    Subscription          None              None

The current throughput level is 50000 kbps

Smart Licensing Status: Registration Not Applicable/Not Applicable

cisco IR8140H-P-K9 (1RU) processor with 1948753K/6147K bytes of memory.
Processor board ID FDO2438J89L
Router operating mode: Autonomous
2 Gigabit Ethernet interfaces
32768K bytes of non-volatile configuration memory.
8116912K bytes of physical memory.
8032254K bytes of Bootflash at bootflash:.

Configuration register is 0x2102

Router#
```

Note
The configuration register value is shown at the bottom of the output (in this example, Configuration register is 0x2102).

- Step 3
- Record the setting of the configuration register.
- Step 4
- Use the **config-register** *value* command from privileged EXEC mode to enable or disable the break setting (indicated by the value of bit 8 in the configuration register).

- Note**
- Break enabled — Bit 8 is set to 0.
 - Break disabled (default setting) — Bit 8 is set to 1.

The configuration register value is updated with the new setting, which takes effect after the next router reload.

Configure the configuration register for autoboot

The configuration register controls how the router boots and can be used to change router behavior for advanced troubleshooting scenarios.



Caution Perform this configuration only with guidance from Cisco support, as altering the configuration register is intended for advanced troubleshooting purposes.

Follow these steps to configure the configuration register for autoboot.

Procedure

- Step 1
- Set the configuration register to 0x0 to boot into ROM, using one of the following methods.

- a) In Cisco IOS configuration mode, use the **config-register 0x0** command.

Example:

```
Router(config)# config-register 0x0
```

- b) From the ROMmon prompt, use the **confreg 0x0** command.

Example:

```
rommon> confreg 0x0
```

- Step 2** Use the **config-register 0x2102** command to set the router to autoboot the Cisco IOS XE software.

Example:

```
Router(config)# config-register 0x2102
```

The configuration register is set to control the router boot behavior as specified.

Reset the router

Reset the router to restore factory defaults or recover from configuration issues by bypassing the current running configuration. Use this procedure when you need to reset a router to factory defaults or recover from a configuration that prevents normal operation. This process uses ROM monitor (ROMmon) mode to bypass the existing configuration.

Follow these steps to reset the router.

Procedure

- Step 1** If the break is disabled, turn off the router, wait for 5 seconds, and turn the router back on. Within 60 seconds, push the Reset button.

The terminal displays the ROMmon prompt.

```
rommon 1>
```

- Step 2** Use the **confreg 0x2142** command to ignore the running configuration.

Example:

```
rommon 2> confreg 0x2142
```

- Step 3** (Optional) Use the **DEVICE_MANAGED_MODE=autonomous** command to set the device managed mode to autonomous.

Example:

```
rommon 3> DEVICE_MANAGED_MODE=autonomous
```

Note

Do not configure this command unless the router is in controller mode and needs to be changed to autonomous mode.

- Step 4** Use the **sync** command to sync the configuration changes.

Example:

```
rommon 4> sync
```

Step 5 Use the **reset** command to reset the router and apply the configuration register value.

Example:

```
rommon 5> reset
resetting...
```

Note

The router reloads with the reset.

Step 6 Use the **confreg** command to verify that the correct value (0x2142) was applied. When prompted to change the configuration, enter **n**.

Example:

```
rommon 1> confreg
Configuration Summary
(Virtual Configuration Register: 0x2142)
enabled are:
[ 0 ] console baud: 9600
boot:..... image specified by the boot system commands
do you wish to change the configuration? y/n [n]: n
```

Step 7 Use the **boot filesystem:/image-name** command to boot the image with the configuration register value 0x2142.

Example:

```
rommon 2> boot
bootflash:ir8100-universalk9.BLD_V175_THROTTLE_LATEST_20210207_015223_V17_5_0_161.SSA.bin
```

The router resets and boots with the specified image, bypassing the previous running configuration. You can now reconfigure the device as needed.

Recover a lost password

Use this task to regain access to your router when you have forgotten or lost the password.



Note Password recovery is possible only when you are connected to the router through the console port. These procedures cannot be performed through a Telnet session.

Follow these steps to recover a lost password.

Procedure

-
- Step 1** Reset the router.
 - Step 2** Change the configuration register to 0x2142.
 - Step 3** Boot the router with the configuration register value 0x2142 from ROMmon.
 - Step 4** If you used the Reset button, use the **configure terminal** and **license smart reservation** commands to add the license.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
Router(config)# license smart reservation
```

You have successfully recovered access to your router.

What to do next

For additional reset details, see [\[Reference Title\]](#).

Reset the configuration register value

Reset the configuration register value after password recovery or reconfiguration to restore normal device operation. Perform this task after you have recovered or reconfigured a password and need to restore the configuration register to its original value.

Follow these steps to reset the configuration register value after you have recovered or reconfigured a password.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 2 Use the **config-register value** command with the original configuration register value that you recorded.

Example:

```
Router(config)# config-register value
```

Step 3 Use the **exit** command to exit configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# exit
```

Note

To return to the configuration that was used before you recovered the lost enable password, do not save the configuration changes before rebooting the router.

Step 4 Reboot the router and enter the recovered password.

The configuration register is reset to its original value, and the router operates with the recovered password configuration.

Configure a console port transport map

Configure a transport map to define policies for console port connections, including how connections wait for VTY lines and what banner messages are displayed to users. This task describes how to configure a transport map for a console port interface on the router.

Follow these steps to configure a console port transport map.

Procedure

Step 1 Use the **enable** command to enable privileged EXEC mode. Enter your password if prompted.

Example:

```
Router> enable
```

Step 2 Use the **configure terminal** command to enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router# configure terminal
```

Step 3 Use the **transport-map type console *transport-map-name*** command to create and name a transport map for handling console connections, and to enter transport map configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config)# transport-map type console consolehandler
```

Step 4 Use the **connection wait [allow [interruptible] | none [disconnect]]** command to specify how a console connection is handled using this transport map.

Example:

```
Router(config-tmap)# connection wait none
```

Note

- **allow interruptible** — The console connection waits for a Cisco IOS VTY line to become available, and also allows users to enter diagnostic mode by interrupting a console connection that is waiting for a Cisco IOS VTY line to become available. This is the default setting. Users can interrupt a waiting connection by entering Ctrl-C or Ctrl-Shift-6.
- **none** — The console connection immediately enters diagnostic mode.

Step 5 (Optional) Use the **banner [diagnostic | wait] *banner-message*** command to create a banner message that is seen by users entering diagnostic mode or waiting for the Cisco IOS VTY line because of the console transport map configuration.

Example:

```
Router(config-tmap)# banner diagnostic X
Enter TEXT message. End with the character 'X'.
--Welcome to Diagnostic Mode--
X
Router(config-tmap)#
```

Note

- **diagnostic** — Creates a banner message seen by users directed to diagnostic mode because of the console transport map configuration.
- **wait** — Creates a banner message seen by users waiting for the Cisco IOS VTY line to become available.
- ***banner-message*** — The banner message, which begins and ends with the same delimiting character.

Step 6 Use the **exit** command to exit transport map configuration mode and re-enter global configuration mode.

Example:

```
Router(config-tmap)# exit
```

Step 7 Use the **transport type console console-line-number input transport-map-name** command to apply the settings defined in the transport map to the console interface.

Example:

```
Router(config)# transport type console 0 input consolehandler
```

Note

The *transport-map-name* for this command must match the *transport-map-name* defined in the `transport-map type console` command.

The transport map is configured and applied to the console port, defining how console connections are handled according to the specified policies.

View console port, SSH, and telnet handling configurations

Use the console port, SSH, and Telnet handling configuration commands to view transport map configurations and current access policies for incoming connections. These commands help you verify connection handling settings and banner configurations.

Commands

Use these commands to view console port, SSH, and Telnet handling configurations:

- **show transport-map**
- **show platform software configuration access policy**

Use the **show transport-map** command to view transport map configurations.

showtransport-map [all | nametransport-map-name] type[console]]

This command can be used either in user EXEC mode or privileged EXEC mode.

Example

This example shows transport maps that are configured on the router: console port (`consolehandler`):

```
Router# show transport-map all
Transport Map:
Name: consolehandler Type: Console Transport

Connection:
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable Wait banner:

Waiting for the IOS CLI bshell banner:
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode

Router# show transport-map type console
Transport Map:
```

```
Name: consolehandler
```

```
REVIEW DRAFT - CISCO CONFIDENTIAL
```

```
Type: Console Transport
```

```
Connection:
```

```
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable Wait banner:
```

```
Waiting for the IOS CLI Bshell banner:
```

```
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode
```

```
Router# show transport-map type persistent ssh
```

```
Transport Map:
```

```
Name: consolehandler Type: Console Transport
```

```
Connection:
```

```
Wait option: Wait Allow Interruptable Wait banner:
```

```
Waiting for the IOS CLI Bshell banner:
```

```
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode
```

Use the **show platform software configuration access policy** command to view the current configurations for handling the incoming console port, SSH, and Telnet connections. The output of this command provides the current wait policy for each type of connection (Telnet, SSH, and console), as well as information on the currently configured banners.

Unlike the **show transport-map** command, the **show platform software configuration access policy** command is available in diagnostic mode so that it can be entered in scenarios where you need transport map configuration information, but cannot access the Cisco IOS CLI.

Example

This example shows the **show platform software configuration access policy** command.

```
Router# show platform software configuration access policy
```

```
The current access-policies
```

```
Method : telnet
```

```
Rule : wait with interrupt Shell banner:
```

```
Welcome to Diagnostic Mode
```

```
Wait banner :
```

```
Waiting for IOS Process
```

```
Method : ssh Rule : wait Shell banner: Wait banner :
```

```
Method : console
```

```
Rule : wait with interrupt Shell banner:
```

```
Wait banner :
```

Factory reset commands

Factory reset commands are network management utilities that:

- remove all customer-specific data on a router or switch that has been added
- erase configuration, log files, boot variables, core files, bootflash, nvram, rommon variables, licenses, and logs, and
- restore the platform to boot up as if new from the factory.

Factory reset command details

The **factory-reset all** command erases the bootflash, nvram, rommon variables, licenses, and logs.



Caution

Use of the factory reset command should not be done lightly. All customer configurations will be deleted and the platform will boot up as if new from the factory.



Note

factory-reset all does not work if IOS-XE is running in controller mode. Please refer to SDWAN configuration information.

Boot sequence after factory reset includes booting the image and loading the configuration:

Booting the image:

- The bootloader attempts to boot "golden.bin" from the bootflash: partition
- If no "golden.bin" is present, then boot the first image.

Loading the configuration:

- IOS looks for "golden.cfg" file on nvram: partition and applies it upon booting.
- If no "golden.cfg" is present on nvram: then IOS looks for "golden.cfg" file on bootflash: partition and applies it upon booting.
- If no "golden.cfg" is present on bootflash: then configurations are erased and Software Configuration dialog is used.

Example: Factory reset command execution

```
Router#factory-reset all
The factory reset operation is irreversible for all operations. Are you sure? [confirm]
*Enter*

*May 12 09:55:45.831: %SYS-5-RELOAD: Reload requested by Exec. Reload Reason: Factory Reset.

***Return to ROMMON Prompt
```

